

汉英对照阅读系列
Chinese-English Readers series

Tales 上下五千年(五)
from Five Thousand Years
of Chinese
History (V)



Better Link Press

11(kus)-1/pang. muhammad kus. 2017-201

致读者 8

关于《上下五千年(五)》 10

1、黄袍加身 12

2、杯酒释兵权 22

3、李后主亡国 30

4、赵普收礼 40

5、杨无敌 48

6、寇准抗辽 62

7、狄青不怕出身低 76

8、范仲淹实行新政 86

9、铁面无私的包拯 96

目
录

2013/w	Alisher Navoiy
731	navoiygi
	Uzbekiston MK.

Ko'matchi Fond
 PVI
 23648/5

To the Reader.....	9
About the Book.....	11
1. The Imperial Yellow Robe Is Now His.....	13
2. A Cup of Wine Relieves the Generals of Their Command.....	23
3. Li, the Last King, Loses His Kingdom.....	31
4. Zhao Pu Receives a Gift.....	41
5. Yang, the Invincible.....	49
6. Kou Zhun Holds off Liao Aggression.....	63
7. Di Qing Sees No Shame in His Low Birth.....	77
8. The New Deal of Fan Zhongyan.....	87
9. The No-nonsense, Impartial Bao Zheng.....	97

目 录

- 10、王安石变法 106
- 11、司马光写《通鉴》 118
- 12、花石纲 126
- 13、方腊起义 134
- 14、头鱼宴上的阿骨打 142
- 15、李纲守东京 152
- 16、两个皇帝当俘虏 162
- 17、宗泽三呼“过河” 172
- 18、韩世忠阻击金兵 184
- 19、岳家军大破兀术 194
- 20、美国献泰桧 210

10. The Reforms of Wang Anshi..... 107
11. Sima Guang Writes *Zi Zhi Tong Jian*
 ("Historical Events Retold as a Mirror
 for Government") 119
12. The Plants and Rocks Convoys..... 127
13. Fang La Rises in Rebellion..... 135
14. Aguda's Defiance at the Fish Feast..... 143
15. Li Gang Defends the Capital..... 153
16. Two Emperors Are Taken Prisoner..... 163
17. Zong Ze Thrice Cries.
 "Cross the River!" 173
18. Han Shizhong Blocks the Passage
 of the Jin Army..... 185
19. Yue Fei Routs Wuzhu's Army..... 195
20. The Traitor, Qin Hui..... 211

- 21、“莫须有”冤狱 222
- 22、成吉思汗统一蒙古 232
- 23、贾似道误国 244
- 24、文天祥起兵 256
- 25、张世杰死守崖山 268
- 26、正气歌 278
- 27、欧洲来客马可·波罗 288
- 28、《窦娥冤》感天动地 298
- 29、一只眼的石人 306
- 30、和尚当元帅 316

21. "A Plausible Case"..... 223
22. Genghis Khan Unifies the Mongols..... 233
23. Jia Sidao Sells the Country
down the River..... 245
24. Wen Tianxiang Raises an Army..... 257
25. Zhang Shijie Defends Yashan
to the Death..... 269
26. Ode to the Force of Virtue..... 279
27. Marco Polo, a Visitor from Europe..... 289
28. *Dou E's Grievance Moves Heaven*
and Earth..... 299
29. A One-eyed Stone Figurine..... 307
30. A Monk Turned Grand Marshal..... 317

致读者

要学好一种语言，必须多听、多说、多读、多写。要学好汉语也不例外，必须多听普通话，多阅读汉语作品。

《文化中国·汉英对照阅读丛书》是一套开放的系列，收入其中的主要为当代中国作家的散文、故事、小说等。我们编辑这套汉英对照读物的目的是帮助你阅读欣赏原汁原味的当代中国文学或非文学作品，让你在学习现代汉语、提高汉语阅读水平的同时，了解中国社会、中国文化、中国历史，以及当代中国人民的生活。我们采用汉英对照的办法，是为了帮助你更好地欣赏这些作品，对照英语译文你可以知道自己是不是真正正确地理解了这些汉语原作的意思。

希望你能喜欢。

——编者

To the Reader

Acquisition of proficiency in a foreign language calls for diligent practices in listening, speaking, reading, and writing. Learning Chinese is no exception. To a student of Chinese, extensive reading exercises are as important as constant exposure to spoken Mandarin.

Cultural China: Chinese-English Readers series is an open-ended series of collections of writings in Chinese, mostly essays and short stories by contemporary Chinese writers. Our purpose in putting together this bilingual series is to help you enjoy contemporary Chinese literature and other writings in their authentic, unadulterated flavor and to understand the Chinese society, culture, history, and the contemporary life of the Chinese people as you learn the language and hone your reading skills. A bilingual text will assist you in better savoring these works and in checking your understanding of the Chinese original against the English translation.

We hope you will like this volume.

— the Editor

关于《上下五千年（五）》

《上下五千年》是一套中国历史故事读物。它按历史顺序编写，涉及的时间自远古至清代鸦片战争前。

这套书的选题计划出自教育家和语言学家林汉达（1900—1972）先生之手。林先生拟定了这套书的写作提纲，并写了部分篇目。林先生去世后，曹余章（1924—1996）先生续写完成了其余部分。两位先生薪尽火传写成的这部著作，以准确的史实、精心的编排、流畅的文笔、独特的风格赢得了读者的喜爱。

《上下五千年（五）》汉英对照本摘取了自北宋建立至元朝末年这段历史时期的相关故事。考虑到对照本篇幅不宜太大，我们对原书的内容作了一些删节。

About the Book

Tales from Five Thousand Years of Chinese History is a collection of stories arranged in chronological order, covering a period from ancient times to the pre-Opium-War Qing Dynasty.

The topics were selected by educator and linguist, Lin Handa (1900 – 1972), who drew up the outline for the collection and contributed some chapters. Following Lin's death, Cao Yuzhang (1924 – 1996) took over his mantle and completed the work. This combined effort of two consecutive authors has enjoyed wide appeal by virtue of its historical accuracy, well-structured narrative, fluent writing and distinctive style.

The bilingual *Tales from Five Thousand Years of Chinese History (IV)* covers a period of history from the foundation of the Northern Song Dynasty to the last years of the Yuan Dynasty. For the sake of brevity, the original Chinese work has been slightly abridged in this bilingual edition.

1、黄袍加身

周恭帝即位的时候，年纪太小，由宰相范质、王溥辅政。后周的政局不稳。京城里人心浮动，谣言纷纷，说赵匡胤（音 yin）快要夺取皇位啦。

赵匡胤本来是周世宗手下得力大将，跟随周世宗南征北战，立下不少战功。周世宗在世的时候，十分信任赵匡胤，派他做禁军统帅，官名叫殿前都点检。禁军是后周一支最精锐的部队。

世宗一死，军权落在赵匡胤手里。五代时期，武将夺取皇位的事情多得很，所以，人们有这种猜测也是不足为奇的。

公元960年春节，后周朝廷正在举行朝见大礼的时候，忽然接到边境送来的紧急战报，说北汉国主和辽朝联合，出兵攻打后周边境。

I. The Imperial Yellow Robe Is Now His

When Emperor Gong of the Later Zhou Dynasty ascended to throne, he was too young to govern, so his chief ministers Fan Zhi and Wang Pu acted as regents. In a Later Zhou racked by political uncertainties, rumors began circulating among the anxiety-ridden residents of the imperial capital that Zhao Kuangyin was on the point of grabbing the throne.

A trusted military commander of Emperor Shizong of the Later Zhou Dynasty, Zhao Kuangyin had achieved an impressive string of battlefield successes as he followed Emperor Shizong in his campaigns across China. The Emperor placed so much trust in Zhao that he appointed him a commander of the Imperial Army in charge of defending the Emperor and the capital, with the title of Palace Inspector-General. The Imperial Army was the best-trained and most well equipped military unit in the Later Zhou Dynasty.

Upon the death of Emperor Shizong, the control of the armed forces fell into the hands of Zhao Kuangyin. The history of the Five Dynasties period was replete with instances in which military commanders took over the throne. Speculation about Zhao's intention to seize power was therefore not at all surprising.

In 960 AD, at a grand audience in the Zhou court during the Spring Festival, a messenger brought an urgent war alert to the capital from the frontiers. An allied force of the Northern Han

大臣们慌作一团，后来由范质、王溥作主，派赵匡胤带兵抵抗。

赵匡胤接到出兵命令，立刻调兵遣将，过了两天，就带了大军从汴京出发。跟随他的还有他弟弟赵匡义和亲信谋士赵普。

当天晚上，大军到了离开京城二十里的陈桥驿，赵匡胤命令将士就地扎营休息。兵士们倒头就呼呼睡着了，一些将领却聚集在一起，悄悄商量。有人说：“现在皇上年纪那么小，我们拼死拼活去打仗，将来有谁知道我们的功劳，倒不如现在就拥护赵点检做皇帝吧！”

大伙听了，都赞成这个意见，就推一名官员把这个意见先告诉赵匡义和赵普。

那个官员到赵匡义那里，还没有把话说完，将领们已经闯了进来，亮出明晃晃的刀，嚷着说：“我们已经商量定了，非请点检即位不可。”

赵匡义和赵普听了，暗暗高兴，一面叮嘱大家一定要安定军心，不要造成混乱，一面赶快派人告诉留守在京城的大将石守信、王审琦。

Dynasty and the Liao Dynasty had launched an attack on the Zhou borders. Amid the general panic at the court, Fan Zhi and Wang Pu made the decision to dispatch Zhao Kuangyin to repel the attack.

When he received this order, Zhao immediately set about appointing his commanders and mustering his forces, and within two days he led his massive army out of Bianjing, the capital. He took along his brother Zhao Kuangyi and his trusted adviser Zhao Pu.

Arriving that evening at the Chenqiao post house about ten miles out from the capital, Zhao Kuangyin ordered his troops to set up camp for the night. The soldiers fell asleep before their heads hit the pillow. In the meantime, some commanders gathered in private consultation. Some said, "The Emperor is so young he won't be able to remember or recognize our contribution in the future even if we risk our lives to fight the battles for him now. It would be so much more worth our while to acclaim Inspector-General Zhao as Emperor!" The idea won general approval among all those present at the discussion, and a representative conveyed it to Zhao Kuangyi and Zhao Pu.

Before the representative had a chance to finish his presentation, the other commanders had rushed in with their swords drawn and clamored in unison, "We've decided. We must have the Inspector-General as our Emperor!"

Keeping their joy in check, Zhao Kuangyi and Zhao Pu admonished them to calm their troops and see that the situation did not get out of hand. At the same time, they dispatched a messenger to inform General Shi Shouxin and General Wang Shenqi, who had stayed behind to defend the capital.

没多久，这消息就传遍了军营。将士们全起来了，大家闹哄哄地拥到赵匡胤住的驿馆，一直等到天色发白。

赵匡胤隔夜喝了点酒，睡得挺熟，一觉醒来，只听得外面一片嘈杂的人声，接着，就有人打开房门，高声地叫嚷，说：“请点检做皇帝！”

赵匡胤赶快起床，还没来得及说话，几个人把早已准备好的一件黄袍，七手八脚地披在赵匡胤身上。大伙跪倒在地上磕了几个头，高呼“万岁”。接着，又推又拉，把赵匡胤扶上马，请他一起回京城。

赵匡胤骑在马上，才开口说：“你们既然立我做天子，我的命令，你们都能听从吗？”

将士们齐声回答说：“自然听陛下命令。”

赵匡胤就发布命令：到了京城以后，要保护好周朝太后和幼主，不许侵犯朝廷大臣，不准抢掠国家仓库。执行命令的将来有重赏，否则就要严办。

As word quickly spread through the camp, the troops, now aroused from their sleep, thronged enthusiastically to the post house where Zhao Kuangyin was staying and waited outside until daybreak.

Zhao Kuangyin, after drinking himself to sleep, was awakened by the din of voices coming from the outside. He opened the door and heard a loud appeal: "We want the Inspector-General to be Emperor!"

Before Zhao Kuangyin could utter a word, several soldiers had scrambled in and draped a yellow robe on him. The troops fell on their knees and kowtowed before him amid a general clamor of "Long live the Emperor!" They put Zhao Kuangyin on a horse, not without some pushing and dragging, to lead the troops back to the capital.

Once in his saddle on the horse, Zhao Kuangyin finally had a chance to make himself heard: "Since you've made me Emperor, will you be able to follow my orders?"

The troops answered as a man, "We are certainly at His Majesty's orders."

Therefore, Zhao Kuangyin issued the order that his troops were to ensure the safety of the Empress Dowager and the young Emperor of the Later Zhou Dynasty upon their entrance into the capital, forbidding them to do any harm to the court officials or to raid the state treasury or storehouses. Those carrying out these orders would be rewarded and those breaching them would be severely punished. Since Zhao Kuangyin was supreme commander of the Imperial Army and enjoyed the support of his generals, there was no question of anyone not following his orders.

	Alisher Navoiy
2013/10	nomidagi
231	O'zbekiston MK

赵匡胤本来就是禁军统帅，再加上有将领们拥护，谁敢不听号令！将士们排好队伍开往京城。一路上军容整齐，秋毫无犯。

到了汴京，又有石守信、王审琦等人作内应，没费多大劲儿就拿下了京城。

将领们把范质、王溥找来。赵匡胤见了他们，装出为难的样子说：“世宗待我恩义深重。现在我被将士逼成这个样子，你们说怎么办？”

范质等不知该怎么回答。有个将领声色俱厉地叫了起来：“我们没有主人。今天大家一定要请点检当天子！”

范质、王溥吓得赶快下拜。

周恭帝让了位。赵匡胤即位做了皇帝，国号叫宋，定都东京（今河南开封）。历史上称为北宋。赵匡胤就是宋太祖。经过五十多年混战的五代时期，宣告结束。

to the letter. The troops marched toward the capital in a disciplined, orderly fashion.

With inside support provided by Shi Shouxin and Wang Shenqi, taking the capital Bianjing was easy for Zhao's army.

When Fan Zhi and Wang Pu were brought before Zhao Kuangyin, he said to them with feigned embarrassment, "I know I owe a deep debt of gratitude to Emperor Shizong. But what could I do when the troops wouldn't take my no for an answer?"

Fan Zhi and Wang Pu did not know how to reply. A general barked, "We owe allegiance to none other than the Inspector-General, and we want him to be our Emperor as of today!"

Frightened, Fan Zhi and Wang Pu went down on their knees to pay homage to Zhao Kuangyin.

With the abdication of Emperor Gong of the Later Zhou Dynasty, Zhao Kuangyin became Emperor of a new dynasty called the Song, and chose Dongjing (modern-day Kaifeng, Henan Province) as his capital. This became known to history as the Northern Song Dynasty. Zhao Kuangyin assumed the title of Emperor Taizu of the Northern Song Dynasty. The Five Dynasties period characterized by five decades of war and conflict thus ended.

赵匡胤做了皇帝，他的母亲当然成了太后。当大臣们向太后祝贺的时候，太后却皱起眉头，显出很忧愁的样子。

等大臣退了朝，侍从们问太后说：“皇上即位，您怎么还不快活？”

太后说：“我听说做天子很不容易。能够把国家管理好，这个位子才是最尊贵的，要是管理不好，出了乱子，再想做一个老百姓还做不成哩。”

太后的担心不是没有道理的。赵匡胤虽然即了位，但是全国还没有统一，别说周围还有一个个割据政权，就是原来后周统治的中原地区，也还有一些节度使，对赵匡胤即位很不服气呢。

With Zhao Kuangyin in the throne, his mother was now the Empress Dowager. When the ministers extended congratulations to her, the Empress Dowager looked worried, her brow knitted tightly.

After the departure of the ministers, her attendants asked the Empress Dowager, "Why are you unhappy on the occasion of your son's enthronement?"

The Empress Dowager said, "I understand that it's tough to be an emperor. The emperor earns respect only when it governs the country well. If his rule leads to chaos, the emperor is stuck and can no longer return to civilian life even if he wants to."

The Empress Dowager's worry was not unfounded. China was divided at the time of Zhao Kuangyin's accession. Some military commissioners who controlled parts of the Central Plains during the *Later Zhou Dynasty* begrudged Zhao's accession to the throne. There were also independent governments on the outer fringes of China.

2、杯酒释兵权

宋太祖即位后不出半年，就有两个节度使起兵反对宋朝。宋太祖亲自出征，费了很大劲儿，才把他们平定。

为了这件事，宋太祖心里总不大踏实。有一次，他单独找赵普谈话，问他说：“自从唐朝末年以来，换了五个朝代，没完没了地打仗，不知道死了多少老百姓。这到底是什么道理？”

赵普说：“道理很简单。国家混乱，毛病就出在藩镇权力太大。如果把兵权集中到朝廷，天下自然太平无事了。”

宋太祖连连点头，赞赏赵普说得好。

后来，赵普又对宋太祖说：“禁军大将石守信、王审琦两人，兵权太大，还是把他们调离禁军为好。”

宋太祖说：“你放心，这两人是我的老朋友，不会反对我。”

赵普说：“我并不担心他们叛变。但是据我看，这两个人没有统帅的才能，管不住下面的将士。有朝一日，下面的人闹起事来，只怕他们也身不由主呀！”

2. A Cup of Wine Relieves the Generals of Their Command

Barely six months into the reign of Emperor Taizu of the Northern Song Dynasty, two military commissioners rebelled. Emperor Taizu personally led his army to quash the rebellion, which was put down after much effort.

This experience deeply unsettled Emperor Taizu, who privately asked Zhao Pu, "Why have five dynasties already risen and fallen in the short space of time between the end of the Tang Dynasty and now, all plagued by endless strife that took a huge toll on civilian lives?"

Zhao Pu replied, "The reason is quite plain. The anarchy in the country has its origin in the uncontrolled growth of the military governors' power. Once the control of the military is centralized in the hands of the court, the country will be at peace."

Emperor Taizu nodded in approval.

On another occasion, Zhao Pu said to Emperor Taizu, "Shi Shouxin and Wang Shenqi, the two generals of the Imperial Army, wield too much power over the army. It's a good idea to transfer them out of the Imperial Army."

The Emperor reassured him, "Don't worry. These two are old friends of mine and will not challenge me."

Zhao Pu replied, "I'm not worried about the possibility of their rebelling against you. They lack leadership qualities; if trouble brews in their ranks, they will be overwhelmed."

宋太祖敲敲自己的额角说：“亏得你提醒一下。”

过了几天，宋太祖在宫里举行宴会，请石守信、王审琦等几位老将喝酒。

酒过几巡，宋太祖命令在旁侍候的太监退出。他拿起一杯酒，先请大家干了杯，说：“我要不是有你们帮助，也不会有现在这个地位。但是你们哪儿知道，做皇帝也有很大难处，还不如做个节度使自在。不瞒各位说，这一年来，我就没有一夜睡过安稳觉。”

石守信等人听了十分惊奇，连忙问这是什么缘故。

宋太祖说：“这还不明白？皇帝这个位子，谁不跟红呀？”

石守信等听出话音来了。大家着了慌，跪在地上说：“陛下为什么说这样的话？现在天下已经安定了，谁还敢对陛下三心二意？”

宋太祖摇摇头说：“对你们几位我还信不过？只怕你们的部下将士当中，有人贪图富贵，把黄袍披在你们身上。你们想不干，能行吗？”

石守信等听到这里，感到大祸临头，连连磕头，含着眼泪说：“我们都是粗人，没想到这一点，请陛下指引一条出路。”

Emperor Taizu tapped his temple and said, "Thanks for the timely warning!"

A few days later Emperor Taizu hosted a banquet in his palace, to which he invited senior generals, including Shi Shouxin and Wang Shenqi.

After a few rounds of wine, Emperor Taizu ordered the eunuchs in attendance to withdraw. Raising his cup, he proposed a toast and invited the guests to drink up, saying, "Without your help I wouldn't be here today. But does any one of you realize that the Emperor has his share of problems. A military commissioner would have it easier than the Emperor. To be candid with you, I haven't had a good night's sleep for the past year."

Shi Shouxin and the others were surprised to hear this from the Emperor and asked for clarification.

Emperor Taizu said, "Isn't it obvious? The throne is a much coveted prize."

Shi Shouxin and the others got the drift and went down on their knees in fear, saying, "Why does His Majesty say this? Now that stability has been re-established in the country, who would have the temerity to waver in his allegiance to His Majesty?"

Shaking his head, Emperor Taizu said, "I have full trust in you. However, if some among your troops should be tempted by wealth and power and put a yellow robe on you, would you be able to resist?"

Shi Shouxin and the others now clearly sensed danger; they kept knocking their heads on the floor and said in a teary voice, "Unsophisticated military men that we are, the thought never entered our mind. Will His Majesty point a way out for us?"

宋太祖说：“我替你们着想，你们不如把兵权交出来，到地方上去做个闲官，买点田产房屋，给子孙留点家业，快快活活度个晚年。我和你们结为亲家，彼此毫无猜疑，不是更好吗？”

石守信等齐声说：“陛下给我们想得太周到啦！”

酒席一散，大家各自回家。第二天上朝，每人都递上一份奏章，说自己年老多病，请求辞职。宋太祖马上照准，收回他们的兵权，赏给他们一大笔财物，打发他们到各地去做节度使。

历史上把这件事称为“杯酒释兵权”（“释”就是“解除”）。

过了一段时期，又有一些节度使到京城来朝见。宋太祖在御花园举行宴会。太祖说：“你们都是国家老臣，现在藩镇的事务那么繁忙，还要你们干这种苦差，我真过意不去！”

有个乖巧的节度使马上接口说：“我本来没什么功劳，留在这个位子上也不合适，希望陛下让我告老回乡。”

Emperor Taizu said, "I think it would be in your interest to hand your control over the army to the court and take up a sinecure someplace away from the capital. You will be able to buy some land and some houses, which could be bequeathed to your offspring, and live out the rest of your life in happiness and without care. You and I will be like family, with no more reason for any mutual mistrust. Isn't that better for all of us?"

Shi Shouxin and the others replied in unison, "His Majesty has seen to every detail with our interest in his heart!"

The guests went home after the banquet. The next morning each one of them submitted a memorial asking permission to resign their office because of age and illness. Emperor Taizu immediately granted their request and took back their power over the military. They were subsequently sent away with large sums of money to take up office as regional military commissioners.

This incident is known to Chinese history as "a cup of wine that relieves the generals of their command."

On a later occasion when some military commissioners came to the capital for an imperial audience, Emperor Taizu invited them to a banquet in the imperial garden. He said to them, "You are all veteran ministers of the government and busy in your military districts. I am really sorry to ask you to undertake such a strenuous trip."

A smart military commissioner came up with a quick answer, "I haven't made any major contribution that would justify my staying in office. I request His Majesty's permission to retire to my home town."

也有个节度使不知趣，唠唠叨叨地把自己的经历夸说了一番。说自己立过多少多少功劳。宋太祖听了，直皱眉头，说：“这都是陈年老账了，尽提它干什么？”

第二天，宋太祖把这些节度使的兵权全部解除了。

宋太祖收回地方将领的兵权以后，建立了新的军事制度，从地方军队挑选出精兵，编成禁军，由皇帝直接控制，各地行政长官也由朝廷委派。通过这些措施，新建立的北宋王朝开始稳定下来。

Another, less tactful military commissioner began talking about his achievements, which caused Emperor Taizu to comment with a frown. "There's no need to rehash this old stuff."

The next day Emperor Taizu relieved all these military commissioners of their command.

After taking back the power of the regional military commanders, Emperor Taizu reorganized the military, with the best men selected from armies away from the capital recruited to constitute the Imperial Army, which was put under the direct control of the Emperor. Top local officials were now appointed by the central government. With the implementation of these measures, the Northern Song Dynasty finally began to see a measure of stability.

3、李后主亡国

宋太祖稳定了内部，雄心勃勃，准备出兵统一全国。当时，五代时期的“十国”，留下来的北方有北汉，南方还有南唐、吴越、后蜀、南汉、南平等。要统一全国，该先从哪里下手呢？先打北汉，还是先打南方呢？宋太祖想了几天，还是决定不下来。

一天夜里，风雪交加。赵普正在家里烤火取暖，忽然听得门外一阵敲门声。赵普心里奇怪，这么寒冷的夜里，还有谁会来找他？他打开门一看，只见一个人披着斗篷，在雪地里站着。赵普定睛一看，大吃一惊，原来来的竟是宋太祖。

赵普连忙把宋太祖请进屋里，拨红了炭火，在炭火上炖上肉，叫他老妻拿出酒来招待。

赵普问：“雪下得这么大，陛下为什么还要出来？”

宋太祖说：“我想事，反正睡不着，就来找你商量一下。”

赵普想了一会，说：“如果我们先打下北汉，就会受到辽朝

3. Li, the Last King, Loses His Kingdom

With his house in order, the ambitious Emperor Taizu was now poised to unify the country by military force. Of the Ten Kingdoms of the Five Dynasties Period, the Northern Han in the north, and the Southern Tang, Wuyue, the Later Shu, the Southern Han and Nanping in the south were left. Which one should he take on first in his quest to unify China? Should he start by attacking the Northern Han, or tackle the south first? Emperor Taizu reflected on these matters for days without coming to a conclusion.

One freezing night, Zhao Pu was keeping himself warm by a stove when he heard someone knocking on his door. He wondered who could be visiting in such a snowstorm. He opened the door and took a close look at the unexpected visitor in a cape standing in the snow. He recognized, to his great surprise, Emperor Taizu.

Zhao Pu quickly ushered Emperor Taizu into the house, stoked the fire and started boiling a pot of meat. He told his wife to bring wine to the table.

Zhao Pu asked, "Why has His Majesty come out in such a blizzard?"

Emperor Taizu said, "I couldn't sleep with all these things on my mind, so I thought I might as well come to you for advice."

After hearing Emperor Taizu out, Zhao Pu paused for reflection

的威胁。还不如先削平南方，回过头来再打北汉。小小北汉，不过像弹丸一样大，晚一点收拾也跑不了。”

宋太祖笑着说：“我们想到一起去了。”

宋太祖和赵普决定了先南后北的计划以后，约摸花了十年时间，先后出兵消灭了南平、后蜀、南汉。这样，南方的割据政权只留下南唐和吴越两国。

南唐是“十国”中最大的一个割据政权，那里土地肥沃，没有像中原那样遭到战争的破坏，所以经济繁荣，国力富裕。但是，南唐的国主都是政治上十分昏庸无能的人，后来弄得国力渐渐衰弱下来。

最后的一个国主李煜（音 yù），历史上称南唐后主，是一个著名的词人，对诗词、音乐、书画，十分精通，可就是不懂得处理国事。北宋建国后，李煜每年向北宋进贡大量金银财宝，想维持他的地位。后来，他看到宋太祖接连消灭了周围三个小国，才着慌起来，赶快派使者给宋太祖送去一封信，表示愿意取消南唐国号，自己改称“江南国主”。但是这一点小小让步，怎么能改变宋太祖统一中国的决心呢。

before saying, "If we take the Northern Han first, we will face threat from the Liao. It would be better to pacify the south before turning around to attack the Northern Han, which is so tiny that sooner or later it will submit to His Majesty."

Emperor Taizu was pleased with the advice. "That's the conclusion I've come to, as well."

Once Emperor Taizu and Zhao Pu undertook the pacification of the south, it would be another ten years before Nanping, the Later Shu and the Southern Han were conquered, leaving only the two separatist regimes, the Southern Tang and Wuyue.

The Southern Tang was the largest of the Ten Kingdoms. It was economically prosperous because it was blessed with fertile land and was spared the ravages of war suffered by the Central Plains. Unfortunately, in their collective political ineptitude, a succession of kings of this once wealthy kingdom managed to put it on a path of decline.

The last of these kings, Li Yu, known to Chinese history as Li, the Last King of the Southern Tang, was a renowned poet, exceptionally accomplished in the arts of verse, music, calligraphy and painting, but dismally ignorant of the art of governance. Following the founding of the Northern Song Dynasty, Li Yu paid huge annual tributes to it in gold, silver and other treasures in the hope of preserving his status. After three smaller neighboring states were conquered by Emperor Taizu of the Northern Song Dynasty, he became apprehensive and lost no time in sending an emissary with a letter to Emperor Taizu, declaring his willingness to rename his kingdom "Southern Tang" and to change his title to "King of Jiangnan." This tiny concession proved insufficient to alter the determination of Emperor Taizu to unify China.

公元974年九月，宋太祖派大将曹彬、潘美带领十万大军分水陆两路攻打南唐。曹彬从荆南带领水军沿江东下，很快就占领了池州（今安徽贵池），进驻采石矶（今安徽马鞍山市）。潘美带领的步兵到了江北，被辽阔的江面挡住了进军的道路。

有人向宋军献计，如果用竹筏和大船搭成浮桥，步兵就可以全部顺利过江。潘美听了这个计策，马上赶造浮桥。

这个消息传到南唐的国都金陵（今江苏南京市），南唐君臣正在喝酒。李后主问周围大臣该怎么办？大臣说：“自古以来，没听说搭浮桥过江的，一定办不成！”

后主听了，哈哈大笑说：“我早说他们是小孩子闹着玩罢了。”

过了三天，宋军搭好浮桥，潘美的步兵像在陆地上行军一样，跨过长江。南唐的守将败的败，投降的投降。十万宋军很快就打到金陵城边。

那时候，李后主还正在宫里跟一批和尚道士诵经讲道，宋军到了城外，他还蒙在鼓里呢。有一天，他到城头上巡视，发现

In September of 974 AD, Emperor Taizu sent his generals Cao Bin and Pan Mei at the command of 100,000 troops to attack the Southern Tang by land and by water. Cao Bin's waterborne force sailed out of Jingnan eastward on the Yangtze River and soon reached Caishiji (modern-day Ma'anshan, Anhui Province) after taking control of Chizhou (modern-day Guichi, Anhui Province). Pan Mei's infantry found its advance barred by the wide river after it reached the north bank of the Yangtze.

A suggestion was made to the Song troops to build a pontoon bridge made of bamboo rafts and big boats across the river so that the infantrymen could safely and quickly cross over. Pan Mei immediately acted on the suggestion and started building the pontoons.

When this information reached Jinling (modern-day Nanjing, Jiangsu Province), the capital of the Southern Tang Dynasty, the king was drinking with his ministers. Li, the Last King asked his ministers for advice. They replied, "Never since ancient time have we heard of such a thing as crossing a river on pontoons. It will never work!"

The Last King said with a peal of laughter, "I knew these were a bunch of kids dabbling in adult stuff."

Three day later, the Song troops finished the pontoons, and Pan Mei's infantry crossed the Yangtze as if marching on land. The commanders of the Southern Tang forces either were defeated or surrendered. The 100,000-strong Song army was soon at the gates of the city of Jinling.

As this happened, Li, the Last King, was chanting mantras and discussing scriptures with Buddhist and Daoists monks in his palace, oblivious of what was going on. On one of his routine

城外到处飘扬着宋军旗帜，这才大吃一惊，回宫以后，派大臣徐铉（音 xuán）到东京去求和。

徐铉见了宋太祖说：“李煜待陛下，就像儿子待父亲一样孝顺，为什么还要讨伐他？”

宋太祖反问道：“那么你倒说说，父亲和儿子能分成两家吗？”

徐铉没话说，回到金陵向李后主汇报。过了一个月，宋军围城越来越紧，李后主又派徐铉到东京去。

徐铉苦苦恳求宋太祖不要进攻金陵，宋太祖听到不耐烦，一手按住利剑，怒气冲冲地说：“你不要多说了，李煜并没有什么罪。但是现在天下一家，我的床边，怎么能让别人睡着打呼噜呢！”

徐铉眼看着再恳求也没用，只好再回到金陵。李后主听了汇报，知道求和没有希望，连忙调动驻守上江的十五万大军来救。兵到皖口，受到宋军两路夹攻。南唐军放火烧宋军，哪知正碰到起北风，火反烧了自己。南唐军全军覆没。

inspections on the battlements, he was surprised by the sight of a sea of Song flags and standards outside the city walls. He rushed back to his palace and dispatched his minister Xu Xuan to Dongjing to sue for peace.

Xu Xuan said to Emperor Taizu. "Li Yu has submitted to His Majesty like a dutiful son. Why does His Majesty still want to attack him?"

Emperor Taizu turned the question back. "Tell me then. Why should father and son live in separate households?"

Xu Xuan had no answer to that question and returned to Jinling to report to Li, the Last King. Another month elapsed and the noose around the city tightened another notch. Li, the Last King, sent Xu Xuan on another mission to Dongjing.

Xu Xuan implored Emperor Taizu not to attack Jinling, but the Emperor began to lose his patience. With his hand on his sword, he said angrily to Xu Xuan, "Save your breath! I'm not saying Li Yu has committed any offense. But what I want now is a unified country, and to achieve it I cannot allow someone else to snore at my bedside."

Recognizing the futility of any further entreaties, Xu Xuan returned to Jinling. After hearing his report, Li, the Last King, knew the peace overture was doomed. He immediately called in the 150,000 troops stationed in Shangjiang to come to his rescue. These Tang troops were attacked on two flanks by the Song army at Wankou. When the Tang army tried to set fire to the Song camp, the wind turned and the Tang troops were themselves engulfed in flames and perished in large numbers.

曹彬派人进城告诉李后主，劝他趁早投降，免得城里百姓的生命财产遭到毁灭。后主还想拖下去，曹彬就下令攻城。

第二天，城被攻破了。曹彬率领宋军整队进城，秩序井然。李后主叫人在宫里堆了柴草，准备放火自杀，但是毕竟没有这个勇气。最后还是带着大臣出宫门，向曹彬投降。

李后主被押到东京，宋太祖对他还比较优待。但是李后主从一个尽情享乐的国君变成一个亡国的俘虏，心里十分辛酸，每天流着眼泪过日子。他本来是写词的能手，在这段时期里，写了一些感情忧伤的词。“问君能有几多愁，恰似一江春水向东流”就是他这段时期词作中的名句。

Cao Bin sent a messenger into the city to urge Li, the Last King, to surrender as soon as possible to avoid loss of life and property. When Li, the Last King, tried to stall, Cao Bin gave the order to attack.

The following day the city fell. Cao Bin's troops entered the city in a disciplined and orderly fashion. Li, the Last King, had asked for a pile of kindling to be prepared in his palace for the purpose of self-immolation, but his nerves failed him at the last moment, and he walked out of his palace with his court to surrender to Cao Bin.

Li, the Last King, was taken to Dongjing, where he was treated well by Emperor Taizu. However, he never got over the fact that he had fallen from the power and glory of a monarch to the status of a person under house arrest whose kingdom was no more. He passed his days in tears. An expert poet, he composed a number of poems suffused with a deep wistfulness. One of his most popular lines is, "Pray tell how much melancholy weighs on thee? It's like so much water in spring rushing east to the sea!"

4、赵普收礼

从宋太祖取得政权开始，到平定南方，赵普是主要的谋士，立了不少大功。宋太祖拜赵普为宰相，事无大小，都跟赵普商量。

赵普出身小吏，比起一般文臣来，他的学问差得多。他当上宰相以后，宋太祖劝他读点书。赵普每次回家，就关起房门，从书箱里取书，认真诵读。第二天上朝处理政事，总是十分敏快。后来，家里人发现，他的书箱里藏的不过是一部《论语》。于是人们就流传一种说法，说赵普是靠“半部《论语》治天下”的。

宋太相信任赵普，赵普也敢于在宋太祖面前坚持自己的意见。有一次，赵普向宋太祖推荐一个人做官。接连两天，宋太祖没有同意。第三天赵普上朝的时候，又送上奏章，坚持要求宋太祖同意他的推荐，这下可触怒了宋太祖。宋太祖把奏章撕成两半，扔在地上。

4. Zhao Pu Receives a Gift

From the time of Emperor Taizu's seizure of power through the pacification of the south, Zhao Pu's advice was largely responsible for the successes enjoyed by Emperor Taizu of the Northern Song Dynasty. Emperor Taizu, who regularly consulted him on matters big and small, appointed Zhao Pu Chief Minister.

Zhao Pu started his career as a minor official. His erudition fell far short of that of most other, much more cultured high officials. Following his appointment as Chief Minister, Emperor Taizu urged him to get into the habit of reading. Zhao Pu would get a book out of his book chest when he came home from work, close the door of his study and start reading aloud. The next day he would dispose of weighty matters of state in an effective and decisive manner. His family eventually found out that the only books in that chest were the *Analects of Confucius*. A popular legend began to circulate that by reading through only half of the *Analects of Confucius*, Zhao Pu was already able to run the government as well as he did.

Because of Emperor Taizu's trust in him, Zhao Pu was unafraid to hold to his convictions in front of the Emperor. On one occasion, Zhao Pu recommended someone to Emperor Taizu as a good choice for an office. For two days, Emperor Taizu withheld his consent. On the third day, when Zhao Pu again presented a memorial at the daily audience to urge the Emperor to endorse his recommendation, Emperor Taizu took umbrage. He shredded the memorial and threw the pieces on the floor.

赵普趴在地上，不慌不忙地把扯碎的奏章拾起来，放在袖子里。退朝回家以后，赵普把扯碎的奏章粘接起来，过了几天，又带着它上朝交给宋太祖。宋太祖见赵普态度这样坚决，只好接受了他的意见。

再有一次，赵普要提拔一名官员，宋太祖不批准。赵普就像前次一样坚持自己的意见。宋太祖说：“我就是不准，你能怎么样？”

赵普说：“提拔人才，都是为国家着想，陛下怎能凭个人的好恶专断！”

宋太祖听了，气得脸色变白，一甩袖就往内宫走。赵普紧紧跟在后面。宋太祖进了内宫，赵普站在宫门外不走。

宫门前的卫士见宰相站在门口不走，只好向宋太祖回报。这时候宋太祖气已经平了，就叫太监通知他，说皇上已经同意他的请求，叫他回家。

赵普做了十年宰相，权力很大。日子久了，就有人想走他的门路，不时有人给他送礼物来。

宋太祖经常到赵普家里去，事先也不派人通知。有一次，吴

Zhao Pu got down on all fours to pick up the pieces in an unhurried fashion and stuffed them into his sleeve. After returning home from the audience, he glued the pieces back together and handed the salvaged memorial to the Emperor a few days later at an imperial audience. Zhao Pu's insistence finally persuaded Emperor Taizu to accept his recommendation.

On another occasion, Zhao Pu's recommendation to promote an official was rejected by Emperor Taizu. Again, Zhao Pu insisted. Emperor Taizu said, "My answer is no. What are you going to do about it?"

Zhao Pu replied, "Promoting talented people is in the state's interest. How can His Majesty decide such weighty matters on a whim?"

His face blanching in anger, Emperor Taizu flicked his sleeves and walked off in a huff towards his inner palace. Zhao Pu followed him closely and refused to budge from the door to the inner palace after Emperor Taizu disappeared behind it.

The guard went in to report to the Emperor that the Chief Minister was refusing to leave. By this time, the Emperor's anger had subsided. He sent a eunuch to inform Zhao Pu that he had agreed to his recommendation and that he could go home.

In his ten years as Chief Minister, Zhao Pu accumulated enormous power. In time, people began to cultivate connections with him, often with gifts.

Emperor Taizu was a frequent unannounced visitor at Zhao Pu's home. One day, Qian Chu, the king of Wuyue, sent a messenger with a letter to Zhao Pu, bearing a gift of ten jars of "fruits of the sea". Zhao Pu placed the ten jars in the main hall

越王钱俶(音chù)派个使者送信给赵普,还捎带了十坛“海产”。赵普把十坛“海产”放在堂前,还没来得及拆信,正好宋太祖到了。

宋太祖在厅堂里坐下,看到这十只坛,就问赵普是什么东西。赵普回答说:“是吴越送来的海产。”

宋太祖笑着说:“既然是吴越送来的海产,一定不错,把它打开来看看吧!”

赵普吩咐仆人,打开坛盖,在场的人一看都傻了眼。原来坛里放的不是什么海产,竟是一块块金子。

宋太祖向来怕官员接受贿赂,滥用权力,看到这情况,心里窝了一肚子火,脸色也就沉了下来。

赵普满头大汗,惶恐地向宋太祖请罪,说:“臣没有看信,实在不知道里面是什么东西,请陛下恕罪。”

and was on the point of opening the envelope containing the letter when Emperor Taizu arrived.

Emperor Taizu sat down in the hall and asked about the ten jars. Zhao Pu replied, "Some fruits of the sea sent by the king of Wuyue."

Emperor Taizu said with a laugh, "Fruits of the sea from Wuyue! They must be of superior quality. Let's look inside."

When Zhao Pu had his servants open the jars. All present were mesmerized. The jars contained not any products of the sea, but bars of gold.

Emperor Taizu, who had long taken a dim view of officials accepting bribes and abusing their power, was appalled by what he saw and his face darkened.

Breaking out a sweat and in great consternation, Zhao Pu begged for forgiveness, "Your humble servant has not had time to read the letter and had no knowledge of the content of the jars. I beg His Majesty's forgiveness."

Emperor Taizu said in an icy tone, "Accept the gift by all means! They must think it is scholarly officials like you who call the shots in government."

宋太祖冷冷地说：“你就收下吧！他们以为国家大事都由你们书生决定的呢。”

打这以后，宋太祖对赵普就有点猜疑起来，不久，又有官员告发赵普违反禁令，贩运木料。原来，当时朝廷禁止私运秦、陇（今陕西、甘肃一带）大木。赵普曾经到那里运木料为自己造住宅。他的部下趁机冒用赵普名义，私运一批大木到东京贩卖。这件事牵连到赵普。宋太祖大怒。要治赵普的罪，尽管其他大臣为他说情，宋太祖还是撤了赵普的宰相职位。

The incident planted seeds of misgivings in Emperor Taizu's mind about Zhao Pu. Zhao Pu's reputation suffered another blow when he was denounced by an official for allegedly selling timber in violation of the law. There was an official ban on private transportation and trafficking of the heavy timber logged in the Qin and Long regions (in modern-day Shaanxi and Gansu). Zhao Pu had transported timber from there to build a house for himself. Some of his subordinates took advantage of the opportunity to smuggle heavy timber in Zhao Pu's name to Dongjing where they sold it for profit. Zhao Pu was thus unwittingly implicated in the infraction. Emperor Taizu was incensed and decided to punish Zhao Pu. In spite of the intercession of other ministers with the Emperor on Zhao Pu's behalf, he was in the end stripped of his position of Chief Minister.

5、杨无敌

宋太祖花了十三年工夫，灭了南方五国，接着，就出兵攻打北汉都城太原。北汉请辽朝出兵援助，宋军吃了败仗。不久，宋太祖也得病死去，他的弟弟赵匡胤继承皇位。这就是宋太宗。

宋太宗决心完成统一北方的事业，公元979年，他亲自率领四路大军围攻北汉都城太原。辽军又来援助，宋太宗派兵截断援兵要道。太原城在宋军重重包围之中，外无援兵，内无粮草。北汉国主刘继元没法，只好投降。刘继元手下有一名老将杨业，也归附宋朝。宋太宗早就听说杨业武艺高强，十分器重他，任命他做大将。

宋太宗灭了北汉，想乘胜攻打辽朝，收复北方失地。宋军攻势凌厉，北方有几个州的辽朝守将纷纷投降。宋军一直打到

5. Yang, the Invincible

It took Emperor Taizu thirteen years to quash the five kingdoms in the south. Thereafter, he undertook the campaign to capture Taiyuan, the capital of the Northern Han Dynasty. With the help of Liao troops, the Northern Han defeated the Northern Song army. Emperor Taizu died of illness shortly after, and his younger brother Zhao Kuangyi succeeded him as Emperor Taizong of the Northern Song Dynasty.

Determined to carry through the unification of China, Emperor Taizong personally led four armies in 979 AD to lay siege to Taiyuan, the capital city of the Northern Han Dynasty. Once again, Liao troops came to the Northern Han's rescue. However, a force sent by Emperor Taizong cut them off. Taiyuan, now tightly encircled by the Song troops and cut off from reinforcements, began to run out of food and fodder. Liu Jiyuan, the king of the Northern Han, saw no way out but to surrender. His veteran general Yang Ye also transferred fealty to the Northern Song Dynasty. Having long heard about the military talent of Yang Ye, Emperor Taizong entrusted him with important responsibilities and conferred the title of Chief General on him.

After quashing the Northern Han Dynasty, Emperor Taizong decided to press his new military advantage by attacking the Liao Dynasty to recover lost territory in the north. In the face of the strong offensive of the Song troops, a succession of Liao commanders defending several regions in the north surrendered. The Song army had advanced all the way to Youzhou (modern-

幽州（今北京市）。后来，辽朝派大将耶律休哥救援。

双方在高梁河（今北京市城西）打上一仗，宋兵大败，宋太宗乘了一辆驴车，逃回东京。

打那以后，辽军不断袭击宋朝边境。宋太宗十分担心，就派杨业为代州刺史，扼守雁门关。

公元980年，辽朝派了十万大军攻打雁门关。那时候，杨业手下只有几千人马，兵力相差很大。杨业是个有经验的老将，知道靠硬拼是不行的，就把大部分人马留在代州，自己带领几百名骑兵，悄悄地从小路绕到雁门关北面敌人后方。

辽兵向南进军，一路上没遇到抵抗，正在得意。忽然，后面响起一片喊杀声，只见烟尘滚滚，一支骑兵从背后杀来，像猛虎冲进羊群一样，乱砍猛杀。辽兵毫无防备，又弄不清后面来了多少人马，个个心惊胆战，阵容大乱，哪儿还抵挡得了，纷纷向北逃窜。杨业带兵追赶上去，杀伤大批辽兵，还杀死了一名辽朝贵族，活捉了一员辽将。

雁门关大捷以后，杨业威名远扬。辽兵一看到“杨”字旗号，就吓得不敢交锋。人们给杨业起了个外号，叫做“杨无敌”。

day Beijing), when the Liao Dynasty sent its top general Yelü Xiuge into battle to save the day.

The two armies joined battle by the Gaohang River (west of modern-day Beijing), where the Song army was routed. Emperor Taizong fled back to his capital on a donkey-drawn cart.

From then on, the Liao kept up its attacks against Song borders. Gravely concerned, Emperor Taizong appointed Yang Ye as Governor of Daizhou and charged him with defending Yanmen Pass.

In 980 AD, 100,000 Liao troops were sent to breach Yanmen Pass, which was at the time defended by Yang Ye with only a few thousand men. Realizing he was seriously outnumbered, the veteran general knew he could not win in a direct confrontation with the enemy force. Leaving the bulk of his troops in Daizhou, he led a few hundred cavalrymen through back roads, outflanking the enemy and getting behind the attackers.

The Liao army forged southwards, its spirits buoyed by the absence of any resistance, when all of a sudden battle cries erupted behind the troops as a cloud of dust rose up. Soon a cavalry detachment pounced on them like tigers tearing into a flock of sheep, hacking their men to death right and left. Caught totally off guard and confused about the size of the enemy attack force, the Liao troops were thrown into a panic and fled north in disarray. Yang Ye led his men in pursuit, killing large numbers of Liao troops, including a nobleman of the Liao court, and capturing a Liao general.

The victory at Yanmen Pass spread Yang Ye's reputation everywhere. Whenever the Liao troops saw standards with the character Yang on them, they would be afraid to engage the

杨业立下大功，也引起一些边防将领的妒忌。有人给宋太宗上奏章，说了杨业许多坏话。宋太宗正要依靠杨业，不理睬那些诬告，把那些奏章封好了，派人送给杨业。杨业见宋太宗这样信任他，自然十分感动。

过了几年，辽景宗耶律贤死去，即位的辽圣宗耶律隆绪才十二岁，由他的母亲萧太后执政。有个边将向宋太宗上奏章，认为辽朝政局变动，正好趁这个机会收复燕云十六州失地。宋太宗接受了这个意见。公元986年，宋太宗派出曹彬、田重进、潘美率领三路大军北伐，并且派杨业做潘美的副将。

三路大军分路进攻，旗开得胜。潘美、杨业的一路人马出了雁门关，很快就收复了四个州。但是曹彬率领的主力因为孤军深入，后来被辽军杀得大败。宋太宗赶快命令各路宋军撤退。

潘美、杨业接到命令，就领兵掩护四个州的百姓撤退到狼

enemy. Yang Ye acquired the nickname "Yang the Invincible."

His military successes also made Yang Ye a target of jealous bile from commanders of border garrisons. Some submitted memorials to Emperor Taizong making damaging accusations against Yang Ye. Emperor Taizong, however, considered Yang Ye an indispensable aide. Not only did he ignore those attempts to malign Yang Ye, but forwarded those slanderous memorials in sealed envelopes to Yang Ye, who was naturally deeply touched by this trust the Emperor showed toward him.

A few years later, Yelü Longxu, who was only twelve, succeeded Yelü Xian, Emperor Jingzong of the Liao Dynasty, on his death. He took the title of Emperor Shengzong of the Liao Dynasty. Empress Dowager Xiao, Longxu's mother, ruled as regent. This prompted the commanding general of a border garrison to write a memorial to Emperor Taizong of the Northern Song Dynasty, urging him to take advantage of the political transition in the Liao court to recover the lost territory of the Sixteen Regions, including Yanzhou and Yunzhou. Emperor Taizong took his advice, and in 986 AD launched a northern expedition with three armies led respectively by Cao Bin, Tian Chongjin and Pan Mei, with Yang Ye as Pan Mei's second-in-command.

The three armies scored early victories as they advanced along their respective routes, with Pan Mei and Yang Ye recovering four regions as soon as their army marched out of Yanmen Pass. However, the main force led by Cao Bin was later routed by the Liao troops because it had penetrated too deeply into enemy territory without ensuring sufficient support. Emperor Taizong immediately ordered all the troops to pull back.

Upon receiving the order, Pan Mei and Yang Ye withdrew

牙村。那时候，辽军已经占领寰州（今山西朔县东，寰音 huán），兵势很猛。杨业建议派兵佯攻，吸引住辽军主力，并且派精兵埋伏在退路的要道，掩护军民撤退。

监军王侁（音 shēn）反对杨业的意见，说：“我们带了几万精兵，还怕他们？我看我们只管沿着雁门大路，大张旗鼓地行军，也好让敌人见了害怕。”

杨业说：“现在敌强我弱，这样干一定要失败。”

王侁带着嘲笑的口吻说：“杨将军不是号称无敌吗？现在在敌人面前畏缩不战，是不是另有打算？”

这一句话把杨业激怒了。他说：“我并不是怕死，只是看到现在时机不利，怕让兵士们白白丧命。你们一定要打，我可以打头阵。”

主将潘美也支持王侁的主张。杨业无可奈何，只好带领手下人马出发了。临走的时候，他流着眼泪对潘美说：“这个仗肯

their troops as well as the civilians of the four liberated regions under their protection to the safety of the village of Langya. At that time, the Liao army had taken control of Huanzhou (east of modern-day Shuo County, Shanxi Province) and possessed an overwhelming numerical superiority. Yang Ye proposed a tactic of feigning an attack to hold down the main force of the Liao army, while positioning an elite contingent to provide cover for the retreating troops and civilians.

Wang Shen, the Army Supervisor, challenged this tactic, arguing, "We have an elite force of tens of thousands of troops. Why should we be afraid of them? In my view we should just march in formation on the high road leading from Yanmen, flaunting our standards and beating our drums to strike terror into the hearts of the enemy troops."

Yang Ye objected, "Your tactic is doomed to failure because we are now seriously outnumbered."

Wang Shen countered derisively, "Isn't General Yang the fabled Invincible One? What could be the real reason behind this sudden battle-shyness. I wonder?"

This had the effect of infuriating Yang Ye, who declared, "I'm not afraid of death. But I do believe our soldiers shouldn't be allowed to die in vain when we face such unfavorable odds. If you insist on engaging the enemy even under these circumstances, I will lead the first attack."

General Pan Mei also took Wang Shen's side. Yang Ye had no choice but to ride into action. Before riding into battle, he said in tears to Pan Mei, "I have no doubt that this is a lost battle. I had planned to wait for the right moment to deal a heavy blow to the enemy in fulfillment of my patriotic duty. But now I am compelled

定要失败。我本来想看准时机，痛击敌人，报答国家。现在大家责备我避敌，我不得不先死。”

接着，他指着前面的陈家峪（今山西朔县南，峪音yù）对潘美说：“希望你们在这个谷口两侧，埋伏好步兵和弓弩手。我兵败之后，退到这里，你们带兵接应，两面夹击，也许有转败为胜的希望。”

杨业出兵没有多远，果然遭到辽军的伏击。杨业虽然英勇，但是辽兵像潮水一样涌上来。杨业拼杀了一阵，抵挡不住，只好一边打一边后退，把辽军引向陈家峪。

到了陈家峪，正是太阳下山的时候。杨业退到谷口，只见两边静悄悄，连宋军的影儿都没有。潘美带领的主力到哪儿去了呢？原来杨业走了以后，潘美也曾经把人马带到陈家峪，等了一天，听不到杨业的消息，王侁认为一定是辽兵退了。他怕让杨业抢了头功，催促潘美把伏兵撤去，离开了陈家峪；等到他们听到杨业兵败，又往另外一条小道逃跑了。

杨业见约定的地点没人接应，气得直跺脚，只好带领部下转身跟追上来的辽兵展开搏斗，兵士们个个奋勇抵抗。但是辽

to die before I could fulfill that duty because I have to deflect the criticism that I am running from the enemy."

Pointing at Chenjiayu Valley (south of modern-day Shuo County, Shanxi Province) in the distance, he said to Pan Mei. "I hope you can place some infantrymen and archers in ambush on the two sides of the valley. When I am forced back to that location, you can attack from the two sides in my support. That way we might have a chance to turn the tide and snatch victory from the jaws of defeat."

As he had predicted, the Liao army ambushed Yang Ye's troops not long after they marched out of their camp. Yang Ye's heroic combat was useless against the tidal waves of Liao troops that kept surging ahead. Although putting up a valiant fight despite the odds, Yang Ye and his troops found themselves overwhelmed and Yang Ye drew the Liao troops towards Chenjiayu Valley as planned.

They reached Chenjiayu Valley at sunset to find the place deserted. The valley was eerily quiet and there was no sign of any Northern Song troops. Where was the main force under Pan Mei's command? It turned out Pan Mei's force did come to the Valley, and had been waiting for news from Yang Ye. After one day, when no news came, Wang Shien believed that the Liao force must have retreated. Worried that Yang Ye would claim credit ahead of him, he urged Pan Mei to withdraw the ambushers and pull out of the Valley. When they finally learned of Yang Ye's defeat, they fled by a back road.

When he found that the expected support was not there at the designated location, Yang Ye was frustrated beyond words. There was nothing to do but to lead his troops back into battle

军越来越多，到了后来，杨业身边只有一百多个兵士。他含着泪，高声向兵士说：“你们都有自己的父母家小，不要跟我一起死在这里，赶快突围出去，也好让朝廷得知我们的情况。”

兵士们听了这些话，再看看杨业浴血奋战的情景，感动得都流下热泪，没有一个愿意离开杨业。最后，兵士都战死了，杨业的儿子杨延玉和部将王贵也牺牲了。杨业身上受了十几处伤，浑身是血，还来回冲杀，杀伤了几百名敌人。不料一支箭飞来，正射中他的战马，马倒在地下，把他摔了下来。辽兵乘机围了上来，把他俘虏了。

杨业被俘以后，辽将劝他投降。他抬起头叹了口气说：“我杨业本来想消灭敌人，报善国家。没想到被奸臣陷害，落得全军覆没，哪还有脸活在世上呢？”他在辽营里，绝食了三天三夜，就牺牲了。

against the pursuing enemy. Soon Yang Ye had only about a hundred men left. Soldier after valiant soldier fell before the increasing numbers of Liao troops. Yang Ye shouted in tears to the soldiers. "You have parents and family. I don't want you to die with me here. I want you to make a break for it. One day you will be able to tell the government what really happened."

The soldiers were moved to tears by these words and by Yang Ye's determination to make a heroic last stand. Not one of them had the heart to leave him. All perished in battle, including Yang Ye's son Yang Yanyu and his lieutenant Wang Gui. Wounded in a dozen places on his body and covered in blood, Yang Ye never stopped fighting. Charging back and forth, he slew hundreds. When his steed, shot by an arrow, fell and threw him off, the Liao troops surrounded him, taking him captive.

After Yang Ye was captured, the Liao general urged him to surrender. He looked up with a sigh, saying, "I had wanted to perform my patriotic duty by defeating the enemy but I ended up losing all my men because of the actions of wrongheaded officials. I cannot live with this disgrace." He refused food and drink in Liao captivity, and died three days later.

杨业战死的消息传到东京，朝廷上下都为他哀痛叹息。宋太宗丧失了一名勇将，自然也感到难过，把潘美降职处分，王侁革职查办。

杨业死后，他的后代继承他的事业，儿子杨延昭、孙子杨文广在保卫宋朝边境的战争中都立了功。他们一家的英勇事迹受到人们的传诵和赞美，民间流传的杨家将故事，就是根据他们的事迹发展起来的。

When news of Yang Ye's death reached Dongjing, the entire court mourned the loss. Emperor Taizong was naturally heartbroken over the loss of a valiant, competent general. He demoted Pan Mei, relieved Wang Shen of his commission, and ordered an inquiry into his misconduct.

Yang Ye's descendents turned out to be his worthy successors. His son Yang Yanzhao and his grandson Yang Wenguang performed brilliantly in defending the Northern Song Dynasty's borders against foreign aggression. Their heroic feats became a folk legend, and provided material for the popular stories about the "Yang Family of Generals" widely circulated and passed down through the ages in China.

6、寇准抗辽

辽朝欺侮宋朝无能，多次进犯边境。到宋太宗的儿子宋真宗赵恒即位后，有人向宋真宗推荐寇准担任宰相，说寇准忠于国家，办事有决断。

宋真宗说：“听说寇准这个人好强任性，怎么办？”

这个大臣说：“现在辽朝进犯中原，正需要像寇准这样的人来承担大事。”

寇准在宋太宗时期担任过副宰相等重要官职，他的正直敢谏是出了名的。有一次，寇准上朝奏事，触犯了宋太宗。宋太宗听不下去，怒气冲冲站起来想回到内宫去。寇准却拉住太宗的袍子不让走，一定请太宗坐下听完他的话。宋太宗拿他没有办

6. Kou Zhun Holds off Liao Aggression

Taking advantage of the pervasive incompetence at the Northern Song court, the Liao Dynasty staged repeated border incursions into Song territory. Soon after the accession of Zhao Heng, son of Emperor Taizong, as Emperor Zhenzong of the Northern Song Dynasty, the name Kou Zhun was submitted to the new Emperor as a highly recommended candidate for the post of Chief Minister by virtue of his loyalty to the government and his ability to solve difficult situations.

Emperor Zhenzong observed, "I've heard that Kou Zhun is a willful person who thinks he can do no wrong. How does one deal with that side of his personality?"

The high official who recommended Kou Zhun replied, "It is precisely someone like Kou Zhun who will prove equal to the challenge of warding off the Liao's designs on the Central Plains."

During previous stints of service to Emperor Taizong, including in his stint as Deputy Chief Minister, Kou Zhun had become famous for courageously speaking unwelcome truths to the Emperor. On one such occasion, Kou Zhun managed to anger Emperor Taizong with his report and comments. When the Emperor could no longer stand listening to Kou Zhun and rose to his feet to go back to his inner palace, Kou Zhun stopped him by seizing his gown and insisted that Emperor Taizong should hear him out. Emperor Taizong had no choice but to stay. He was heard later to heap

法，后来还称赞他说：“我有寇准，就像唐太宗有魏征一样。”

但是正因为寇准为人正直，得罪了一些权贵，后来被排挤出朝廷，到地方去做知州。这一回，宋真宗看到边境形势紧急，才接受大臣的推荐，把寇准召回京城。

公元1004年，辽朝萧太后、辽圣宗亲自率领二十万大军南下，前锋已经到了澶州（今河南濮阳，澶音chán）。告急文书像雪片一样飞到朝廷。寇准劝真宗带兵亲征，副宰相王钦若和另一个大臣陈尧叟却暗地里劝真宗逃跑。王钦若是江南人，主张迁都金陵（今江苏南京），陈尧叟是蜀人，劝真宗逃到成都去。

宋真宗听了这些意见，犹豫不决，最后召见新任宰相寇准，问他说：“有人劝我迁都金陵，有人劝我迁都成都，你看该怎么办才好？”

寇准一看两边站着的王钦若和陈尧叟，心里早有了数。他声色俱厉地说：“这是谁出的好主意？出这种主意的，应该先斩他们的头！”他认为只要真宗亲自带兵出征，鼓舞士气，一定

praise on Kou Zhun, saying, "Emperor Taizong of Tang had an excellent adviser in Wei Zheng. I have my Kou Zhun."

However, Kou Zhun's uprightness also got him in trouble with some of the powerful and resulted in him being ostracized from the court as a regional governor. In the face of a clear danger at the borders, Emperor Zhenzong found himself compelled to accept his minister's recommendation and call Kou Zhun back to the capital.

In 1004 AD, Empress Dowager Xiao and Emperor Shengzong of the Liao Dynasty led a 200,000 strong army southward. As its vanguard reached Chanzhou (modern-day Puyang, Henan Province), the Northern Song court was swamped by reports of the imminent danger faced by its regional commanders. Kou Zhun urged Emperor Zhenzong to personally lead the army to repel the attack, while Deputy Chief Minister Wang Qinruo and another minister, Chen Yaosou, were privately counseling the Emperor to flee the capital. Wang Qinruo, who was from the south, believed that the capital should be moved to Jinling. Chen Yaosou, on the other hand, being from Shu country, advised Emperor Zhenzong to seek safety in Chengdu.

Torn between these alternatives, Emperor Zhenzong finally called in the new Chief Minister Kou Zhun for advice: "Some suggest that I move the capital to Jinling; others urge me to move to Chengdu. What do you think?"

Seeing Wang Qinruo and Chen Yaosou flanking the Emperor, Kou Zhun immediately understood what was going on. He demanded in a stern voice, "Who are the wise guys who came up with these cute ideas? They should have their heads chopped off!" He maintained that if Emperor Zhenzong personally led the

能打退辽兵，并且说，如果放弃东京南逃，人心动摇，敌人就会乘虚而入，国家就保不住了。

宋真宗听了寇准一番话，也壮了胆，决定亲自率兵出征，由寇准随同指挥。

大队人马刚刚到韦城（今河南滑县东南），听到南下辽军兵势强大，一些随从大臣吓坏了，趁寇准不在的时候，又在真宗身边唠叨，劝真宗暂时退兵，避一避风头。宋真宗本来很不坚决，一听这些意见，动摇起来，又召见寇准。

宋真宗对寇准说：“大家都说往南方跑好，你看呢？”

寇准严肃地说：“主张南逃的都是懦弱无知的人。现在敌人迫近，人心动荡。我们只能前进一尺，不可后退一寸。如果前进，河北各军士气百倍，如果回兵几步，那么全军瓦解，敌人紧逼追赶。陛下想到金陵也去不成了。”

宋真宗听寇准说得义正辞严，没话可说，但是心里还是七上八下，定不下主意。

army into battle, the army would be highly motivated and could beat back the Liao invaders. He argued also that if the court deserted Dongjing and fled south, it would so demoralize the people that the enemy would be able to exploit the uncertainties and instability to topple the government. Kou Zhun's words bolstered Emperor Zhenzong's resolve. He decided to lead the army into battle with Kou Zhun as co-commander.

When the Northern Song army reached Weicheng (southeast of modern-day Hua County, Henan Province), some accompanying ministers, having learned of the strength of the massive Liao force moving southward, chose a time when Kou Zhun was absent to once again lobby Emperor Zhenzong for a temporary withdrawal to dodge the brunt of the invading army. Already weak in his resolve, Emperor Zhenzong began to be swayed by the urgings of these ministers. He again summoned Kou Zhun for advice.

He said to Kou Zhun, "Everyone says it's wiser to go south. What do you think?"

Kou Zhun replied in a sober tone, "Those who propose moving south are ignorant cowards. At this moment when the enemy presses closer and the people feel insecure, we can only move forward. We cannot afford the luxury of retreating one inch. If we move forward, the morale of the armies in the various garrisons of Hebei will soar. If we were to take a few steps backward, the entire army would disintegrate, with the enemy in hot pursuit. When that happened, His Majesty would be prevented from reaching Jinling."

Emperor Zhenzong could offer no rebuttal to the cogent analysis of Kou Zhun. He fell silent, but deep down he remained

寇准走出行营，正好碰到殿前都指挥使高琼。寇准冲着高琼说：“您受国家栽培，该怎么报答？”

高琼说：“我愿以一死报国。”

寇准就带着高琼又进了行营，重新把自己的意见向宋真宗说了一遍，并且说：“陛下如果认为我的话不对，请问问高琼。”

高琼往旁边接着说：“宰相说的话是对的。禁军将士家属在东京，都不愿南逃。只要陛下亲征瀛州，我们决心死战，击败辽兵不在话下。”

宋真宗还没开口，寇准紧接着又逼了一句说：“机不可失，请陛下立刻动身！”

在寇准、高琼和将士们的催促下，宋真宗才决定动身到瀛州去。

这时候，辽军已经三面围住了澶州。宋军在要害的地方设下弩箭。辽军主将萧挞凛带了几个骑兵视察地形，正好进入宋军伏弩阵地，弩箭齐发，萧挞凛中箭丧了命。

conflicted, unable to make up his mind.

When Kou Zhun walked out of the imperial tent, he ran into Gao Qiong, the Palace Commander-in Chief. Kou Zhun asked Gao Qiong, "How do you propose to repay the government for what it has done for you?"

Gao Qiong replied, "I am ready to die for the country."

Kou Zhun then took Gao Qiong back into the imperial tent and repeated his advice to the Emperor, adding, "If His Majesty still has doubts about my advice, would he please ask Gao Qiong for his view?"

Gao Qiong echoed Kou Zhun's view, saying, "The Chief Minister is right. The officers and men in the Imperial Army all have their families in Dongjing and will find it hard to support moving the capital to the south. If His Majesty makes up his mind to lead the expedition to Chanzhou, we are determined to fight to the last man. We have no doubt that we will prevail against the Liao army."

Before Emperor Zhenzong had time to utter a word, Kou Zhun added urgently, "It's now or never. Will His Majesty order his army to set out now?"

At the urging of Kou Zhun, Gao Qiong and the troop commanders, Emperor Zhenzong finally made up his mind to advance toward Chanzhou.

By that time, the Liao army had closed in on Chanzhou from three sides. The Northern Song in the meantime had placed archers at strategic locations. When the head general of the Liao army, Xiao Talin, went on a reconnaissance mission accompanied by a few cavalymen, the party walked into an ambush of Song archers, who killed Xiao Talin in a hail of arrows.

辽军主将一死，萧太后又痛惜又害怕。她又听说宋真宗亲自率兵抵抗，觉得宋朝不好欺负，就有心讲和了。

澶州城横跨黄河两岸。宋真宗在寇准、高琼等文武大臣的护卫下，渡过黄河，到了澶州北城。这时候，各路宋军也已经集中到澶州，将士们看到宋真宗的黄龙大旗，士气高涨，欢声雷动。

萧太后派使者到了宋朝行营议和，要宋朝割让土地。宋真宗听到辽朝肯议和，正合他的心意。他找寇准商量说：“割让土地是不行的。如果辽人要点金银财帛，我看可以答应他们。”

寇准根本反对议和，说：“他们要和，就要他们归还燕云失地，哪能再给他们钱财。”

但是，宋真宗一心要和，不顾寇准的反对，派使者曹利用到辽营谈判议和条件。曹利用临走的时候，宋真宗叮嘱他说：“如果他们要赔款，迫不得已，就是每年一百万也答应算了。”

The loss of the head commander of the Liao army brought the Empress Dowager Xiao both grief and fear. The fact that Emperor Zhenzong of the Song Dynasty was personally directing the campaign made her realize that the Northern Song Dynasty would be difficult to defeat. She was now disposed to talk peace.

The city of Chanzhou straddled the Yellow River. Under the escort of Kou Zhun, Gao Qiong and other top officials, Emperor Zhenzong crossed the river to the northern part of Chanzhou. In the meantime, the other forces of the Song army had converged on Chanzhou. When the troops saw the Emperor's large standard bearing the insignia of the yellow dragon, they broke out in thunderous cheers, their morale immeasurably raised.

Empress Dowager Xiao of Liao sent an emissary to the Song camp to negotiate a peace accord which would require concessions of territory by the Song Dynasty. The peace overture found an eager listener in Emperor Zhenzong, who said to Kou Zhun, "Concessions of territory are out of the question, but if the Liao can settle for some money and goods, I don't see any objection."

Kou Zhu, who was opposed to peace parleys, said, "If they want peace, they must give back our territory in the Yanzhou and Yunzhou regions. Why should we give them any money or goods?"

However, Emperor Zhenzong, eager for peace, overrode Kou Zhun's objections and sent his emissary Cao Liyong to the Liao camp to negotiate the terms of the peace accord. Before sending him off, Emperor Zhenzong instructed Cao Liyong, "If they insist on indemnification, you have the authority to agree to annual reparations of 1,000,000 taels."

寇准在旁边听了很痛心，只是当着真宗面不便再争。曹利用离开行营，意催紧紧跟在后面，一出门，一把抓住曹利用的手说：“赔款数目不能超过三十万，否则回来的时候，我要你的脑袋！”

曹利用知道寇准的厉害，到了辽营，经过一番讨价还价，最后定下来，由宋朝每年给辽朝银绢三十万。

曹利用回到行营，宋真宗正在吃饭，不能马上接见。真宗急着要知道谈判结果，就叫小太监出来问曹利用到底答应了多少。曹利用觉得这是国家机密，一定要面奏，太监要他说个大概，曹利用没法，只好伸出三个指头做了个手势。

太监向真宗一回报，宋真宗以为曹利用答应了的赔款数目是三百万，不禁惊叫起来：“这么多！”他稍稍想了一下，又轻松起来，说：“能够了结一件大事，也就罢了。”

他吃完饭，就让曹利用进来详细汇报。当曹利用说出答应了的银绢数目是三十万的时候，宋真宗高兴得简直要跳起来，直称赞曹利用办事能干。

Kou Zhun was pained by this offer but did not want to offer a contrary view in the Emperor's presence. He followed Cao Liyong out of the imperial tent. Grabbing Cao's hand, he said to him, "The reparation must not exceed 300,000. Otherwise I will demand your head when you return."

In fear of Kou Zhun, Cao Liyong drove a hard bargain at the Liao camp and succeeded in fixing the annual reparation at 300,000 taels of silver and silk.

When Cao Liyong returned to camp, Emperor Zhenzong was having his meal and was unable to immediately receive a report from him. However, eager to find out about the final terms of the accord, he sent a low-ranking eunuch to ask Cao Liyong how much reparation was agreed. Cao Liyong insisted on personally reporting to the Emperor because he considered the information a state secret. As the eunuch pressed for a rough figure, Cao Liyong could no longer stall and held up three fingers.

When the eunuch reported back to the emperor, the latter, believing the reparation to be 3,000,000, cried in alarm, "So much!?" However, upon reflection he comforted himself with the thought, "So what! At least we got a major problem out of the way."

His meal over, Emperor Zhenzong summoned Cao Liyong for a full report. When Cao Liyong told him the reparation was 300,000 taels of silver and silk, Emperor Zhenzong nearly leaped with joy and heaped praise on Cao Liyong for his negotiating skills.

接着宋辽双方正式达成和议，宋朝每年给辽朝绢二十万匹，银十万两，不用说，这笔巨额赔款，长期成为北宋人民额外的沉重负担。历史上把这次和议叫做“澶渊之盟”。

由于寇准的坚持抗战，到底避免了更大的失败。宋真宗也觉得寇准有功劳，挺敬重他。但是原来主张逃跑的王钦若却在宋真宗面前说，寇准劝真宗亲征，是把皇上当赌注，孤注一掷。简直是国家的一个大耻辱。宋真宗一想起在澶州的情景，真有点后怕，就反过来怨恨寇准，竟把那忠心耿耿的寇准的宰相职位撤了。

In accordance with the formal accord signed by the two sides, the Northern Song Dynasty was to give the Liao 200,000 bolts of silk and 100,000 taels of silver every year. This large sum added to the burden of the people of the Northern Song for years to come. This accord is known to Chinese history as the "Treaty of Chanyuan" (Chanyuan is another name for Chanzhou).

Kou Zhun's insistence on fighting the Liao invaders averted greater losses. Emperor Zhenzong gave due credit to Kou Zhun, for whom he continued to have great respect. However, Wang Ruoqin, a proponent for fleeing to the south, said to Emperor Zhenzong that Kou Zhun had used the Emperor as a wager in his risky gamble on winning the war by getting the Emperor to personally lead the expedition. He characterized the incident as a serious affront to the state. In addition, Emperor Zhenzong could not recall what happened at Chanzhou without some jitters. The rancor that began to build up in his heart against Kou Zhun finally led to the dismissal of the loyal Kou Zhun as chief minister.

7、狄青不怕出身低

宋真宗用妥协和的办法，安下了辽朝那一头，西北边境的党项族（我国古代少数民族之一）贵族趁宋朝忙着对付辽朝的机会，经常侵犯宋朝边境。

公元1038年，党项族首领元昊，正式宣布即位称帝，国号大夏，建都兴庆（今宁夏银川市）。因为它在宋朝的西北，历史上叫做西夏。

宋仁宗派大臣韩琦和范仲淹到陕西指挥抗西夏的战争。

韩琦、范仲淹刚到陕西的时候，有人向他们推荐，当地军官中有个狄青，英勇善战，有大将的才干。范仲淹正需要将才，听了这话，很感兴趣，要部下把狄青的事迹详细说一下。

原来，狄青本是京城禁军里的一个普通兵士。他从小练得一身武艺，骑马射箭，样样精通，加上胆壮力大，后来被选拔做了小军官。

7. Di Qing Sees No Shame in His Low Birth

By making concessions for peaceful coexistence, Emperor Zhenzong of the Northern Song Dynasty managed to appease the Liao. However, as the Northern Song Dynasty was busy dealing with the Liao threat, the Dangxiang (also known as the Tangut) in the northwest was emboldened to make frequent attacks on the Song borders.

In 1038 AD, Yuan Hao, the chieftain of the Dangxiang tribe, formally proclaimed himself Emperor of the new Dynasty of Great Xia, with its capital at Xingqing (modern-day Yinchuan, Ningxia). Because of its location northwest of the Northern Song Dynasty, it is also known as the Western Xia Dynasty.

Emperor Renzong of the Song Dynasty sent his ministers Han Qi and Fan Zhongyan to Shaanxi to direct the campaign against the Western Xia. When Han Qi and Fan Zhongyan arrived in Shaanxi, someone recommended a young officer in the local army by the name of Di Qing, who was said to be a brave and skillful warrior and to possess the leadership qualities of a commanding general. Fan Zhongyan, who was looking for military leaders, was very much interested, so he asked his subordinates for more details about Di Qing. It turned out Di Qing had been a private in the Imperial Army in the capital. Because of the martial skills he had acquired since a child, his expert horsemanship and mastery of archery as well as bravery and physical strength, he was later

西夏的元昊称帝以后，宋仁宗派禁军到边境去防守，狄青被派到陕西保安（今陕西志丹）。

不久，西夏兵进攻保安。保安的宋军多次被西夏兵打败，兵士们一听说打仗都有点害怕，守将卢守勳为了这件事正在发愁，狄青主动要求让他担任先锋，抗击西夏军。

卢守勳见狄青愿意当先锋，自然高兴，就拨给他一支人马，跟前来进犯的西夏军交战。

狄青每逢上阵，先换了一身打扮。他把发髻打散，披头散发，头上戴着一个铜面具，只露出两只炯炯的眼睛。他手拿一支长枪，带头冲进敌阵，东挑西杀。西夏兵士自从进犯宋境以来，没有碰到过这样厉害的对手。他们看到狄青这副打扮，已经胆寒了。经狄青和宋军猛冲了一阵，西夏军的阵脚大乱，纷纷败退。狄青带领宋军冲杀过去，打了一个大胜仗。

捷报传到朝廷，宋仁宗十分高兴，把卢守勳提升了官职，狄青提升四级。宋仁宗还想把狄青召回京城，亲自接见。后来因为西夏兵又进犯涇州，调狄青去抵抗，不得不取消了召见的打算，叫人给狄青画了肖像，送到朝廷去。

promoted to become a low-ranking officer.

Following Yuan Hao's self-proclamation as Emperor of the Western Xia, Emperor Renzong of the Northern Song Dynasty dispatched troops of the Imperial Army to the frontiers to garrison the borders. Di Qing was sent to Bao'an (modern-day Zhidan, Shaanxi Province).

When an army of the Western Xia attacked Bao'an, the Song troops defending the city, which had previously suffered numerous defeats in clashes with the Xia, were afraid to engage the enemy. As the commanding general, Lu Shouqin, was fretting about his troops' battle shyness, Di Qing volunteered to lead the vanguard to battle the army of the Western Xia. Relieved that Di Qing was willing to lead the vanguard into action, Lu Shouqin put a contingent at Di Qing's disposal.

Before every battle, Di Qing would change his costume. He would let down his long hair and put a bronze mask over his face, leaving two holes through which his eyes glared. Then he would ride into the enemy formation with a lance and start spearing the enemy combatants. In all their skirmishes into Song territory, the soldiers of the Western Xia had never encountered so formidable a foe, whose battle regalia struck terror into their hearts. With Di Qing and Song troops charging fearlessly into their midst, the Xia army was soon thrown into disarray and crumbled in defeat. Pressing their advantage, Di Qing and his troops pursued the enemy force until total victory was in hand.

When news of the victory reached the court, the elated Emperor Renzong of the Song Dynasty promoted Lu Shouqin to a higher position and elevated Di Qing's military rank by four steps. Emperor Renzong had wanted to summon Di Qing to the capital

以后几年里，西夏兵不断在边境各地进犯，弄得地方不得安宁。狄青前后参加了二十五次大小战斗，受了八次箭伤，从没有打过一次败仗。西夏兵士一听到狄青的名字，就吓得不敢跟他交锋。

范仲淹听了部下的推荐，立即召见狄青，问他读过什么书。狄青出身兵士，识字不多，要他说读过什么书，他答不上来。范仲淹劝他说：“你现在是个将官了，做将官的如果不能博古通今，只靠个人的勇敢是不够的。”接着，他还介绍狄青读一些书。

狄青见范仲淹这样热情鼓励他，十分感激。以后，他利用打仗的空隙时间刻苦读书。过了几年，他把秦汉以来名将的兵法都读得很熟，又因为立了战功，不断得到提升，名声更大，后来，宋仁宗把他调回京城，担任马军副都指挥。

宋朝有个残酷的制度。为了防止兵士开小差，在兵士的脸

for an audience but the plan was called off when Di Qing was sent to repel an attack by the Western Xia against Weizhou. A portrait of Di Qing was commissioned and later sent to the court.

For several years, the Western Xia continued to harass the Song borders, disturbing the peace of the border communities. In his twenty-five battles, Di Qing was wounded by arrows eight times, but never once lost a battle. The troops of the Western Xia were so awed by his name that they dreaded engaging him in battle.

After hearing the recommendation of his officers, Fan Zhongyan summoned Di Qing. When Fan asked Di what books he had read, Di Qing the soldier, who was not fully literate, was hard put to give an answer. Fan Zhongyan had this advice for him, "You are now a general. For a general it is no longer enough to be courageous in battle. You need to have a good knowledge of history and current events." He went on to give Di Qing a list of books to read.

Di Qing was grateful to Fan Zhongyan for his concern and encouragement, and made a point of reading assiduously whenever he had free time in his campaigns. In a few years, he had familiarized himself with all the books on military doctrine and the art of warfare written by famous generals since the Qin and Han dynasties. As his war achievements grew, he rose quickly through the ranks and his fame spread. He was later transferred back to the capital as Deputy Commander-in-Chief of the cavalry.

In order to prevent soldiers from deserting, the Northern Song Dynasty resorted to an inhumane practice of tattooing or branding the soldiers' faces with identifying marks. Di Qing had had his

上刺上字。狄青当小兵的时候也被刺过字。过了十多年，狄青当了大将，但是脸上还留着黑色的字迹。

有一次，宋仁宗召见他以后，认为当大将脸上留着黑字，很不体面，就叫狄青回家以后，敷上药，把黑字除掉。

狄青说：“陛下不嫌我出身低微，按照战功把我提到这个地位，我很感激。至于这些黑字，我宁愿留着，让兵士们见了，知道该怎样上进！”

宋仁宗听了，很赞赏狄青的见识，更加器重他。

后来，因为狄青多次立功，被提拔为掌握全国军事的枢密使。一个小兵出身的人当上枢密使，这是宋朝历史上从来没有过的事。有些大臣嫌狄青出身低，劝仁宗不该把狄青提到这么高的职位，但是宋仁宗这时候正在重用将才，没有听这些意见。

face tattooed when he was a private. When he became a prominent general years later, he still had the black tattooed characters on his face.

In an audience with Emperor Renzong, the Emperor told Di Qing that it was unseemly for a general to have these tattooed characters on his face, and that he should apply some special medication to remove them when he went home.

Di Qing replied, "I am grateful to His Majesty for promoting me to where I am solely on the basis of my war achievements, without regard to my humble origin. I would rather keep these markings as an incentive to the soldiers to aspire for greater achievements."

Di Qing's perceptive analysis inspired greater admiration from Emperor Renzong.

On the strength of his numerous victories in military campaigns, he was eventually elevated to the post of Military Affairs Commissioner in charge of all national military affairs. It was unheard-of in Song history for someone to rise from the rank of private to that of Military Affairs Commissioner. Some ministers with a dim view of Di Qing's humble origins tried to dissuade Emperor Renzong from elevating Di Qing to such a high position, but Emperor Renzong, who was in that period in desperate need of military talent, dismissed such advice.

狄青当枢密使，有人总觉得他的出身和地位太不相称。有一个自称是唐朝名相狄仁杰后代的人，拿了狄仁杰的画像，送给狄青说：“您不也是狄公的后代吗？不如认狄公做祖宗吧！”

狄青谦虚地笑了笑说：“我本来是个出身低微的人，偶然碰到机会得到高位，怎么能跟狄公高攀呢。”

There were people who found Di Qing's stature as Military Affairs Commissioner grossly at variance with his lowly beginnings. A self-described descendant of Di Renjie, the famous Chief Minister of the Tang Dynasty, presented a portrait of Di Renjie to Di Qing with this advice, "You must be a descendant of Lord Di. Why don't you adopt him as your ancestor?"

Di Qing smiled and answered modestly, "I am a person of low birth. It is by accident that I've risen to such prominence. There's no way I can claim such a distinguished personality as Lord Di as my ancestor."

8、范仲淹实行新政

由于范仲淹军纪严明，还注意减轻边境上百姓的负担，北宋的防守力量加强了。西夏和北宋打了几年仗，没得到什么好处。到了公元1043年，西夏国主元昊愿意称臣求和，宋朝答应每年送给西夏一批银绢、茶叶，北宋的边境局势才暂时稳定下来。

范仲淹不但是个军事家，而且是宋代著名的政治家、文学家。他是苏州吴县人，从小死了父亲，因为家里贫穷，母亲不得不带着他另嫁到一个姓朱的人家。范仲淹在十分艰苦的环境中成长，他住在一个庙宇里读书，穷得连三餐饭都吃不上，天天只得熬点薄粥充饥，但是他仍旧刻苦自学。有时候，读书到深

8. The New Deal of Fan Zhongyan

Fan Zhongyan's strict discipline over the army and measures he took to reduce the fiscal burden on frontier communities helped to solidify the Northern Song's border defenses. On the other hand, the Western Xia failed to reap any tangible benefits from years of war with the Northern Song. In 1043 AD Yuan Hao, the king of the Western Xia, was finally ready to submit to the Northern Song Dynasty and sign a peace treaty. In exchange, the Northern Song Dynasty promised him annual gifts of silver, silk and tea. Because of the accord, the Northern Song was able to enjoy a period of peace and stability along its northwestern borders.

Military strategy was not the only area where Fan Zhongyan's talent shone; he was also an outstanding statesman and man of letters in the Northern Song Dynasty. A native of Wu County, Suzhou, his father died when he was still a child. He followed his mother to the household of a Mr. Zhu, whom she married to escape destitute poverty. Fan Zhongyan grew up amid great hardship. When he boarded at a temple in order to devote himself to his studies, he could not afford to have three meals a day and had to sustain himself on daily rations of thin gruel. However, none of this shook his determination to improve himself by studying and reading. When he read into the wee hours and could not even keep his eyes open out of sheer fatigue, he would douse

更半夜，实在倦得张不开眼，就用冷水泼在脸上，等倦意消失了，继续攻读。这样苦读了五六年，终于成为一个很有学问的人。

范仲淹原来在朝廷当谏官，因为看到宰相吕夷简滥用职权，任用私人，就向仁宗大胆揭发。这件事触犯了吕夷简，吕夷简反咬一口，说范仲淹交结朋党，挑拨君臣关系。宋仁宗听信吕夷简的话，把范仲淹贬谪到南方，直到西夏战争发生以后，才把他调到陕西去。

范仲淹在宋夏战争中立下了大功，宋仁宗觉得他的确是个人才。这时候，宋王朝因为内政腐败，加上在跟辽朝和西夏战争中军费和赔款支出浩大，财政发生恐慌，宋仁宗就把范仲淹从陕西调回京城，派他担任副宰相。

范仲淹一回到京城，宋仁宗马上召见，要他提出治国的方案。范仲淹知道朝廷弊病太多，要一下子都改掉不可能，准备

his face with cold water to remain awake so that he could continue his. After five or six years of assiduous study, he became an erudite scholar.

When he was a Remonstrance Official in charge of keeping watch over documents flowing to and from the throne and remonstrating with the ruler about conduct or policies that he considered improper, Fan Zhongyan denounced Lü Yijian, the Chief Minister, to Emperor Renzong for his nepotism and abuse of power. By stepping on the toes of such a powerful figure, he was courting trouble. Lü Yijian counterattacked by falsely accusing Fan Zhongyan of surrounding himself with a clique and driving a wedge between the Emperor and the Chief Minister. Swayed by Lü Yijian's slander, Emperor Renzong banished Fan Zhongyan to a district in the south. He was transferred to Shaanxi only when the war with the Western Xia erupted.

Fan Zhongyan's brilliant performance in the war with the Western Xia convinced Emperor Renzong of his leadership qualities. This was a time when corruption in the government and the enormous war and reparations expenditure were depleting the coffers of the state treasury to a critical point. To deal with this pressing problem, Emperor Renzong summoned Fan Zhongyan from Shaanxi to the capital and named him Deputy Chief Minister.

When Fan Zhongyan returned to the capital, Emperor Renzong lost no time in calling him in for an audience to hear his proposals for good governance. Fan Zhongyan was fully aware that it was impossible to remedy all the ills that plagued the central government in one go, and that it had to be accomplished gradually. Nevertheless, at the urging of Emperor Renzong, he laid out a draft

一步一步来。但是，禁不住宋仁宗一再催促，就提出了十条改革措施，它的主要内容是：

一、对官吏一定要定期考核，按他们的政绩好坏提拔或者降职，

二、严格限制大臣子弟靠父亲的关系得官，

三、改革科举制度，

四、慎重选择任用地方长官。

还有几条是提倡农桑，减轻劳役，加强军备，严格法令等等。

宋仁宗正在改革的兴头上，看了范仲淹的方案，立刻批准在全国推行这十条改革措施。历史上把这次改革称为“庆历新政”（“庆历”是宋仁宗的年号）。

范仲淹为了推行新政，先跟韩琦、富弼（音bì）等大臣审查分派到各路（路是宋朝行政区划的名称）担任监司（监察官）的人选。有一次，范仲淹在官署里审查一份监司的名单，发现有贪赃枉法行为的人员，就提起笔来把名字勾去，准备撤换。

ten-point plan for reform, which included the following:

1. Periodic evaluation of government officials and promotion/demotion based on performance and merit, or lack thereof;
2. Strict restrictions placed on the obtaining of government jobs by children of high officials on their father's coattails;
3. Reform of the system of court-administered civil service examinations;
4. Careful vetting and recruitment of candidates for the top positions in local governments.

Other points related to the promotion of silk production and agriculture, reduction of mandatory labor required of citizens, enhanced military preparedness, and the tightening of the rule of law.

In his zeal for reform, Emperor Renzong immediately gave his approval for the implementation of the ten-point reform plan across the Empire. This plan is known to Chinese history as the "Qingli Reform" (Qingli is an era name of Emperor Renzong).

To implement the proposed reforms, Fan Zhongyan got together with other ministers, including Han Qi and Fu Bi, to review the candidates for the position of circuit supervisor in the various *lu* (circuits: administrative divisions in the Song period). One day when Fan Zhongyan was examining a list of circuit supervisors, he noticed the inclusion of someone known to be a corrupt official. He crossed out his name, signaling his removal from office.

Seeing this from a seat nearby, Fu Bi could not help commenting, "Mr. Fan, that stroke of the brush would bring tears to a whole household."

在他旁边的富弼看了心里不忍，就对范仲淹说：“范公呀，你这笔一勾，可害得一家子哭鼻子呢。”

范仲淹严肃地说：“要不让一家子哭，那就害了一路的百姓都要哭了。”

富弼听了这话，心里顿时亮堂了，佩服范仲淹的见识高明。

范仲淹的新政刚一推行，就像捅了马蜂窝一样。一些皇亲国戚，权贵大臣，贪官污吏，纷纷闹了起来，散布谣言，攻击新政。有些原来就对范仲淹不满的大臣，天天在宋仁宗面前说坏话，说范仲淹一些人交结朋党，滥用职权。

宋仁宗看到反对的人多，就动摇起来。范仲淹被逼得在京城呆不下去，就自动要求回到陕西防守边境，宋仁宗就把他打发走了。

Fan Zhongyan gave this sobering answer, "Without bringing tears to that household, we would bring tears to the people of an entire circuit."

This reply immediately made Fu Bi see the light and admire even more the perspicacity and insight of Fan Zhongyan.

The introduction of the new reform measures had the effect of opening a Pandora's box. Members of the royal family and nobility, high officials and corrupt bureaucrats joined in a chorus of protest and started spreading rumors in an attempt to demonize the reforms. Ministers who had always harbored a grudge against Fan Zhongyan bombarded the Emperor with daily allegations about Fan Zhongyan's clique-building activities and abuse of power.

As opposition to the reforms grew, Emperor Renzong began to waver in his resolve. Feeling the heat, Fan Zhongyan found his continued stay in the capital untenable and volunteered to go back to his garrison duty at the Shaanxi frontiers. Emperor Renzong was very happy to grant his wish and get rid of a controversial minister.

With the departure of Fan Zhongyan, Emperor Renzong abolished all the reforms.

范仲淹一走，宋仁宗就下命令把新政全部废止。

范仲淹为了改革政治，受了很大打击，但是他并不因为个人的遭遇感到懊恼。隔了一年，他的一位在岳州（治所在今湖南岳阳）做官的老朋友滕宗谅，修建当地的名胜岳阳楼，请范仲淹写篇纪念文章。范仲淹挥笔写下了《岳阳楼记》。在那篇著名的文章里，范仲淹提到，一个有远大政治抱负的人，他的思想感情应该是“先天下之忧而忧，后天下之乐而乐”（意思是“担忧在天下人之前，享乐在天下人之后”）。这两句名言一直被后来的人传诵，而岳阳楼也由于范仲淹的文章而更加出名了。

Fan Zhongyan's reform proposals brought him immense personal grief, but he did not fret about it. A year after his ouster he was solicited for a commemorative article by his old friend Teng Zongliang, who was a government official in Yuezhou (with its seat in modern-day Yueyang, Hunan Province) on the occasion of the completion of the restoration of Yueyang Pavilion, a famous local landmark. In his article of dedication for Yueyang Pavilion, he wrote that a person with a grand political vision should in his heart and mind be prepared to "be proactive in foreseeing and feeling the concerns of society, and put the happiness and the interests of society before one's own". This has become a much-quoted motto through the ages. The dedication essay helped put Yueyang Pavilion on the national map.

9、铁面无私的包拯

范仲淹的新政失败以后，北宋的朝政越来越腐败，特别是在京城开封府，权贵大臣贪污受贿的风气十分严重，一些皇亲国戚更是肆无忌惮，不把国法放在眼里。后来，开封府来了个新任知府包拯，这种情况才有了点改变。

包拯是庐州合肥人，早年做过天长县（今安徽天长）的县令。有一次，县里发生一个案件，有个农民夜里把耕牛拴在牛棚里，早上起来，发现牛躺倒在地上，嘴里淌着血，掰开牛嘴一看，原来牛的舌头被人割掉了。这个农民又气又心痛，就赶到县衙门告状，要求包拯为他查究割牛舌的人。

这个无头案该往哪里去查呢？包拯想了一下，就跟告状的农民说：“你先别声张，回去把你家的牛宰了再说。”

农民本来舍不得宰耕牛，按当时的法律，耕牛是不能私自屠宰的。但是一来，割掉了舌头的牛也活不了多少天；二来，县官叫他宰牛，也用不到怕犯法。

9. The No-nonsense, Impartial Bao Zheng

In the aftermath of the abolition of Fan Zhongyan's reforms, corruption in the central government became more pervasive, notably in the capital Kaifeng, where graft and bribery were rampant in the top echelons of government. Members of the royal family and nobility showed no regard for the law in their wanton pursuit of ill-gotten gains. This lawlessness began to change with the arrival of Bao Zheng, the new Governor of Kaifeng.

Bao Zheng was originally from Hefei, and had served a stint as the County Magistrate of Tianchang County (in Anhui Province). In his tenure as County Magistrate, he came across a case in which a peasant had put his ox in the cowshed overnight, and then woke up the next morning to find the ox lying in a pool of blood with its tongue cut out. The angry and pained peasant went to the county government office to file a complaint and ask Bao Zheng to find the perpetrator.

With no leads or suspects, the case appeared to be difficult to solve. After some reflection, Bao Zheng told the plaintiff, "Go home quietly and butcher the ox."

The peasant did not have the heart to kill his ox. Besides, butchering oxen used for tilling was prohibited by law for private individuals. On the other hand, an ox with its tongue cut out would not survive for more than a few days. On the other hand, now that he had the sanction of the county magistrate to butcher

那农民回家后，果真把耕牛杀掉了。第二天，天长县衙门里就有人来告发那农民私宰耕牛。

包拯问明情况，立刻沉下脸，吆喝一声说：“好大胆的家伙，你把人家的牛割了舌头，反倒来告人私宰耕牛？”

那个家伙一听就呆了，伏在地上直磕头，老老实实供认是他干的。

原来，割牛舌的人跟那个农民有冤仇，所以先割了牛舌，又去告发牛主人宰牛。

打那以后，包拯审案的名声就传开来了。

包拯做了几任地方官，每到一个地方，都取消了一些苛捐杂税，清理了一些冤案。后来，他被调到京城做谏官，也提出了不少好的建议。宋仁宗正想整顿一下开封的秩序，就把包拯调任开封府知府。

开封府是皇亲国戚、豪门权贵集中的地方。以前，不管哪个当这差使，免不了跟权贵通关节，接受贿赂。包拯上任以后，决心把这种腐败的风气整顿一下。

按照宋朝的规矩，谁要到衙门告状，先得托人写状子，还得通过衙门小吏传递给知府。一些讼师恶棍，就趁机敲诈勒索。

the ox, he should not need to fear the sanction of law.

He went home and butchered the ox. The next day someone filed a complaint with the county government accusing the peasant of illegally butchering an ox.

After hearing the complaint, Bao Zheng's face darkened. He thundered, "You have the nerve to denounce illegal butchering of an ox when it was you who cut out the tongue of that ox in the first place."

The plaintiff, stunned by what he heard, sank to his knees and repeatedly knocking his head on the floor admitted his guilt.

It turned out the person who cut out the ox's tongue had had a feud with the animal's owner. He had been driven by his grudge to cut out the ox's tongue and to denounce the peasant for illegal butchering.

By solving the case, Bao Zheng became widely known for his ability as a judge.

He reduced taxes and solved cases involving wrongful convictions everywhere he went as Chief Magistrate. In his tenure as a Remonstrance Official in the capital, he also proved a source of good advice. In an attempt to clean up Kaifeng, Emperor Renzong appointed Bao Zheng as its Governor.

Kaifeng was where royalty, nobility and the powerful congregated. Whoever became its governor in the past would cultivate the powerful elite and accept bribes from them. Bao Zheng was determined to change all that and deal a heavy blow to the culture of corruption.

It was a common practice in the Northern Song Dynasty for a plaintiff to need someone to prepare a written complaint for him, which a petty official in the bureaucracy would then pass on to

包拯破了这条规矩，老百姓要诉冤告状，可以到府衙门前击鼓。鼓声一响，府衙就大开正门，让百姓直接上堂控告。这样一来，衙门的小吏要想做手脚也不敢了。

有一年，开封发大水，那里一条惠民河河道阻塞，水排泄不出去。包拯一调查，河道阻塞的原因是有些宦官、权贵占据了河道，在河道上修筑花园、亭台。包拯立刻下命令，要这些园主把河道上的建筑全部拆掉。有个权贵不肯拆除。开封府派人去催促，那人还强词夺理，拿出一张地契，硬说那块地是他的产业。包拯详细一检查，发现地契是那个权贵自己伪造的。包拯十分生气，勒令那人拆掉花园，还写了一份奏章向宋仁宗揭发。那人一看事情闹大，要是仁宗真的追究起来，也没有他的好处，只好乖乖地把花园拆了。

一些权贵听到包拯执法严明，都吓得不敢为非作歹。有个权贵想通关节，打算送点什么礼物给包拯，旁人提醒他，别白

the governor. Some officials would seize this opportunity to extort money. Bao Zheng put an end to the practice; now an ordinary citizen with a complaint could simply go to the county building and beat the drum placed in front of the building, and the door would open allowing him to go directly before the presiding judge. This eliminated the possibility of petty officials demanding bribes or committing other shenanigans.

One year, devastating floods struck Kaifeng, and the Huimin River could not channel away the floodwater. An investigation revealed that eunuchs and high officials had appropriated parts of the riverbed for their private use, upon which they had built gardens and pavilions, clogging the river. Bao Zheng ordered the owners to immediately dismantle all private structures on the riverbed. One high official balked at the order and refused to dismantle his structures. When officials sent by the Kaifeng government arrived to press for dismantlement, the high official countered with all kinds of specious arguments and produced a deed to prove his ownership of the land. Upon scrutiny, Bao Zheng found the deed to have been forged by the high official. Bao Zheng was furious and ordered him to immediately dismantle his garden, threatening to denounce the forgery in a memorial to the Emperor. Realizing that it was not in his interest to have the matter escalate and be reported to the Emperor, who might order an inquiry, the official gave in and dismantled the garden. The high officials and powerful figures who used to engage in shady behavior now drew back in fear of the no-nonsense style of law enforcement of Bao Zheng.

When a certain high official wanted to cultivate a relationship with Bao Zheng by offering him a gift, others told him to save

操心了，包拯的廉洁奉公是出了名的。他原来在端州（今广东肇庆）做过官。端州出产的砚台，是当地的特产。皇宫规定，端州官员每年要进贡一批端砚到内廷去。在端州做官的人往往借进贡的机会，向百姓大肆搜刮，私下贪污一批，去讨好那些权贵大臣。搜刮去的端砚比进贡的要多出几十倍。后来，包拯到了端州，向民间征收端砚，除了进贡朝廷的以外，连一块都不增加。直到他离开端州，从没有私自要过一块端砚。

那权贵听了，知道没有空子好钻，也只好罢休。后来开封府的男女老少，没有人不知道包拯是个大清官。民间流传着两句歌谣：“关节不到，有阎罗、包老。”（“阎罗”是传说里管地狱的神。）

包拯对亲戚朋友也十分严格。有的亲戚想利用他做靠山，他一点也不照顾。日子一久，亲戚朋友知道他的脾气，也不敢再为私人的事情去找他了。

宋仁宗很器重包拯，提升他为枢密副使。他做了大官，家里的生活照样十分朴素，跟普通百姓一样。过了五年，他得重

his money because Bao Zheng was known for his incorruptibility. The official was told the following story: Bao Zheng once served in the government of Duanzhou (modern-day Zhaoqing, Guangdong Province), which was famous for its ink stones. The imperial court demanded that Duanzhou officials fulfill an annual quota of Duanzhou ink stones as a tribute. This annual quota was an opportunity for Duanzhou officials to line their pockets by plundering the community. They saved some ink stones for themselves to grease the palm of high officials. The number of ink stones that went into their private possession was many times the required number for the annual tribute. When Bao Zheng took up his post in Duanzhou he would collect only the number of ink stones required for the tribute to the imperial court, and not one more. He completed his term in Duanzhou without ever demanding one ink stone for himself.

The high official understood now that he would not get anywhere with his bribery scheme, so he gave up. The incorruptible Bao Zheng became a household name among residents of Kaifeng, who circulated this ditty, "Don't expect to strike a bargain with either Yanluo (the God of the Netherworld) or with Lord Bao Zheng."

Bao Zheng applied the same stringent standards to his friends and relatives. He would rebuff all attempts by relatives to ride on his coattails. In time, his friends and relatives would understand the kind of person he was and would no longer dare to seek his help with their private affairs.

Emperor Renzong showed his appreciation for Bao Zheng by making him Deputy Military Affairs Commissioner. Even after reaching such heights in officialdom, he continued to lead a

病死了，留下了一份遗嘱说：后代子孙做了官，如果犯了贪污罪，不许回老家，死了以后，也不许葬在咱包家的坟地上。

由于包拯一生做官清廉，不但生前得到人们的赞扬，在他死后，人们也把他当作清官的典型，尊称他“包公”，或者叫他“包待制”、“包龙图”（包拯得这天章阁待制、龙图阁学士的官衔），民间流传着许多包公铁面无私、打击权贵的故事，还编成包公办案的戏曲和小说。虽然其中大都是虚构的传说，但是反映了人们对清官的敬慕心情。

simple, frugal life, not much different from that of an ordinary citizen. Upon his death five years later, he left a will which stated, "if any of my descendants is convicted of corruption while serving in the government, he will not be allowed to return to the ancestral home, and will not be allowed to be buried in the Bao family cemetery."

Bao Zheng won praise for his honesty and incorruptibility when he was alive; he became a model of honesty in government service after his death. His honorary titles include "Bao Gong" (Lord Bao), "Bao Daizhi" (daizhi is an edict attendant, assigned to take notes on imperial pronouncements) and "Bao Longtu" (Longtu was the Dragon Diagram Hall, where he was academician). Folk stories about impartial Bao Gong's no-nonsense crusades against malfeasant officials abound, and some have been adapted into opera pieces and novels. While these stories involve more fiction than fact, they reflect society's admiration and longing for honest and clean government.

10、王安石变法

宋仁宗做了四十年皇帝，虽然也用过像范仲淹、包拯等一些正直的大臣，但是并没有改革的决心，国家越来越衰弱下去。他没有儿子，死后由一个皇族子弟做他的继承人，这就是宋英宗。英宗即位四年，就害病死了。太子赵顼（音xū）即位，这就是宋神宗。

宋神宗即位的时候才二十岁，是个比较有作为的青年。他看到国家的不景气情况，有心改革一番，可是他周围的人，都是仁宗时期的老臣，就是像富弼这样支持过新政的人，也变得暮气沉沉了。宋神宗想，要改革现状，一定得找个得力的助手。

宋神宗即位前，身边有个官员叫韩维，常常在神宗面前谈一些很好的见解。神宗称赞他，他说：“这些意见都是我朋友王安石说的。”宋神宗虽然没见过王安石，但是对王安石已经有了一个好印象。现在他想找助手，自然想到了王安石，就下了一道命令，把正在江宁做官的王安石调到京城来。

10. The Reforms of Wang Anshi

In his thirty years in the throne, Emperor Renzong invited upright men such as Fan Zhongyan and Bao Zheng into the government to serve as his ministers. However, his commitment to reform was weak and the country went on a decline. Since he had no son, a member of the royal family succeeded him upon his death, as Emperor Yingzong of the Northern Song Dynasty. Yingzong died of illness after only four years, and was succeeded by Crown Prince Zhao Xu, as Emperor Shenzong of the Northern Song Dynasty.

Emperor Shenzong ascended the throne when he was only twenty. He turned out to be a young ruler who wanted to make a difference. He very much wanted to lift the country out of the sorry mess it was in by instituting reform, but he was surrounded by the old guard left by Emperor Renzong. Even people like Fu Bi, who used to support reform, had lost their enthusiasm. To change the status quo, Emperor Shenzong believed he needed a strong advocate of reform to help him.

Emperor Shenzong often heard some very good ideas from an official called Han Wei. However, when Emperor Shenzong praised his insights, Han Wei said, "These are actually ideas I borrowed from my friend Wang Anshi." Thus Wang Anshi favorably impressed Emperor Shenzong even before the two ever met. In his quest for a strong ally in his reform effort, he naturally thought of Wang Anshi. He had Wang Anshi transferred to the capital from Jiangnan, where he was a local official.

王安石是宋朝著名的文学家和政治家，抚州临川（今江西抚州西）人。他年轻时候，文章写得十分出色，得到欧阳修的赞赏。王安石二十岁中进士，就做了几任地方官。他在鄞县（今浙江鄞县，鄞音 yín）当县官的时候，正逢那里灾情严重，百姓生活十分困难。王安石兴修水利，改善交通，治理得井井有条。每逢青黄不接的季节，穷人的口粮接不上，他就打开官仓，把粮食借给农民，到秋收以后，要他们加上官定的利息偿还。这样做，农民可以不再受大地主豪强的重利盘剥，日子比较好过一些。

王安石做了二十年地方官，名声越来越大。后来，宋仁宗调他到京城当管理财政的官，他一到京城，就向仁宗上了一份万言书（约一万字的奏章）提出他对改革财政的主张。宋仁宗刚刚废除范仲淹的新政，一听到要改革就头疼，把王安石的奏章搁在一边。王安石知道朝廷没有改革的决心，跟一些大臣又合不来，他就趁母亲去世的时机，辞职回家。

Wang Anshi was a renowned man of letters and statesman in the Northern Song Dynasty. He was originally from Linchuan, Fuzhou (west of modern-day Fuzhou, Jiangxi Province). As a young man, he greatly impressed Ouyang Xiu with his essays. Because of his success in the court-administered civil service exam at the age of 20, he served as magistrate of local government in several locations. When he was county magistrate at Yin County (modern-day Yin County, Zhejiang Province), a natural disaster hit, causing great hardship to the local people. Wang Anshi brought some semblance of normalcy back to the community by undertaking waterworks projects and improving transport and communications. Whenever there was a temporary food shortage between harvests, he would open up the state granaries to loan grain to the poor, who would repay the loan with interest after the autumn harvest at officially fixed rates. This helped improve the peasants' lives because they no longer had to borrow from large landowners and wealthy gentry at usurious rates.

Because of his performance as the magistrate of various local governments over a period of twenty years, Wang Anshi rose to national prominence. He was subsequently summoned by Emperor Renzong to the capital to deal with fiscal matters. Once in the capital, he presented a 10,000-word memorial to the Emperor outlining his proposals for fiscal reform. Emperor Renzong, who had just abolished the reforms of Fan Zhongyan, found any mention of reform distasteful and put Wang Anshi's reform proposal to one side. Realizing that the central government did not have the requisite commitment to reform, and finding it hard to get along with some ministers, Wang Anshi resigned and went home, purportedly to attend his mother's funeral.

这一回，他接到宋神宗召见的命令，又听说宋神宗正在物色人才，就高高兴兴应召上京。

王安石一到京城，宋神宗就叫他单独进宫谈话。神宗一见面就问他说：“你看要治理国家，该从哪儿着手？”

王安石从容不迫地回答说：“先从改革旧的法度，建立新的法制开始。”

宋神宗要他回去写个详细的改革意见，王安石回家以后，当天晚上就写了一份意见书，第二天送给神宗。宋神宗认为王安石提出的意见都合他的心意，越加信任王安石。公元1069年，宋神宗把王安石提升为副宰相。那时候，朝廷里名义上有四名宰相，病的病了，老的老了，有的虽然不病不老，但是一听见改革就叫苦连天。王安石知道，跟这批人一起办不了大事，经过宋神宗批准，任用了一批年轻的官员，并且设立了一个专门制定新法的机构，把变法的权抓了回来。这样一来，他就放开手脚进行改革了。

王安石变法的主要内容是：

一、青苗法。这个办法是他在鄞县试用过的，现在拿来推广到全国实行。

二、农田水利法。政府鼓励地方兴修水利，开垦荒地。

When he received another invitation to serve, this time by Emperor Shenzong, who was recruiting talent in earnest, he gladly accepted the invitation and set out for the capital.

On his arrival, he was invited to a private audience with Emperor Shenzong. The Emperor cut to the chase and asked him, "Where do you think I should start in order to restore good government?"

Wang Anshi replied with self-assurance, "The first order of business is to reform the old system and build a new legal order."

Emperor Shenzong instructed him to prepare a detailed presentation of his reform ideas. That evening Wang Anshi drew up a report elaborating his proposals. He submitted it the next day to the Emperor. Wang Anshi's ideas resonated with Emperor Shenzong and reinforced the latter's trust in him. In 1069 AD, Wang Anshi was promoted to Deputy Chief Minister. In that period there were four chief ministers in the central government, but these were slowed down by frail health, advanced years, or a violent allergy to any mention of reform. Wang Anshi knew that nothing significant could be accomplished with these officials in power. With Emperor Shenzong's approval, he recruited a team of young officials and established a new agency tasked with the preparation of new laws. With the power to institute reform firmly secured, Wang Anshi had a free hand now in implementing his reforms in earnest.

The main elements of Wang Anshi's reform agenda were:

1. A seedling law, which was a government microfinance scheme to tide farmers over between harvests, piloted in Yin County and now to be applied across the country.
2. An agricultural land and waterworks law that offered

三、免役法。官府的各种差役，民户不再自己服役，改为由官府雇人服役。民户按贫富等级，交纳免役钱，原来不服役的官僚、地主也要交钱。这样既增加了官府收入，也减轻了农民的劳役负担。

四、方田均税法。为了防止大地主兼并土地，隐瞒田产人口，由政府丈量土地，核实土地数量，按土地多少、肥瘠收税。

五、保甲法。政府把农民按住户组织起来，每十家是一保，五十家为一大保，十大保为一都保。家里有两个以上成年男子的，抽一个当保丁，农闲练兵，战时编入军队打仗。

王安石的变法对巩固宋王朝的统治，增加国家收入，起了积极的作用。但是，也触犯了大地主的利益，遭到许多朝臣的反对。

incentives to local governments for waterworks and farmland reclamation projects undertaken by them.

3. A law of exemption from mandatory labor and services, which abolished the old system of requiring citizens to perform mandatory labor and services for the government. The government would now hire workers to perform these services, and levy service exemption fees from citizens that varied on a wealth scale. Government officials and landowners, who used to enjoy exemption from public services, would now be required to pay these fees. This law was designed to increase government revenue and reduce the burden of conscripted labor on farmers.

4. A farmland tax equalization law, designed to prevent large landowners from taking more land and falsifying information about land holdings and agricultural households. Under the new law, the government would conduct land surveys to ascertain holdings and levy land taxes based on the amount of holdings and their fertility.

5. The law of *bao* and *jia*, under which the government organized peasant households. Ten households constituted a *hao*, fifty households a greater *hao*, and ten greater *haos* made a *du hao*. A household that had two or more adult males must contribute one as a reserve soldier of the *hao*, who was required to receive military training in peacetime and report for active duty in wartime.

Wang Anshi's reforms contributed to the consolidation of the rule of the Northern Song Dynasty and increased government revenue. At the same time, they conflicted with the interests of large landowners, and consequently ran into strong resistance by many high officials and ministers.

有一次，宋神宗把王安石找去，问他说：“外面人都在议论，说我们不怕天变，不听人们的舆论，不守祖宗的规矩，你看怎么办？”

王安石坦然回答说：“陛下认真处理政事，这就可说是防止天变了。陛下征询下面的意见，这就是照顾到舆论了；再说，人们的话也有错误的，只要我们做得合乎道理，又何必怕人议论。至于祖宗老规矩，本来就不是固定不变的。”

王安石坚持三不怕，但是宋神宗并不像他那么坚决，听到反对的人不少，就动摇起来。

公元1074年，河北闹了一次大旱灾。一连十个月没下雨，农民断了粮食，到处逃荒。宋神宗正为这个发愁，有一个官员趁机画了一幅“流民图”献给宋神宗，说旱灾是王安石变法造成的，要求神宗把王安石撤职。

宋神宗看了这幅流民图，只是长吁短叹，晚上睡不着觉。神宗的祖母曹太后和母亲高太后也在神宗面前哭哭啼啼，诉说天下被王安石搞乱了，逼神宗停止新法。

王安石眼看新法没法实行下去，气愤得上书辞职。宋神宗

Emperor Shenzong summoned Wang Anshi to see him one day and asked him, "People are grumbling about my disregard for the risks of destabilization, my disdain for public opinion and my disobedience to ancestral conventions. What should I do?"

Unperturbed, Wang Anshi replied, "By taking government as seriously as His Majesty does, His Majesty is preventing instability in the country. By consulting his advisers, His Majesty is heeding public opinion. Besides, not all public opinion is right. As long as we are doing the right thing, we shouldn't be bothered by people's grumbling. As for conventions laid down by ancestors, they are not set in stone."

Despite all the attempts by Wang Anshi to assuage Emperor Shenzong's worries, the latter lacked the strength of character evident in Wang Anshi, and began to waver in the face of mounting opposition.

A devastating drought in Hebei in 1074 AD, following ten rainless months, caused a massive exodus of hungry peasants struggling to survive. An official saw an opportunity and presented a painting entitled "Refugees" to the Emperor, on whose mind the famine weighed heavily. The official blamed the disaster on the reforms of Wang Anshi and called for his removal from office.

After viewing the painting, Emperor heaved deep sighs and slept badly. His grandmother, Empress Dowager Cao, and his mother, Empress Dowager Gao, went before him in tears to complain that the country had been plunged into this mess by Wang Anshi. They pressed for the abolition of the reforms.

Realizing the insurmountable hurdles faced by his reforms, Wang Anshi submitted his resignation in disgust. Emperor

也只好让王安石暂时离开东京，到江宁府去休养。

第二年，宋神宗又把王安石召回京城当宰相。刚过了几个月，天空上出现了彗星。这本来是正常的自然现象，但是在当时却被认为是不吉利的预兆。宋神宗又慌了，要大臣对朝政提意见。一些保守派又趁机攻击新法。王安石竭力为新法辩护，要宋神宗不要相信这种迷信说法，但宋神宗还是犹豫不定。

王安石没办法继续贯彻自己的主张。到第三年（公元1076年）春天，再一次辞去宰相职位，回江宁府去了。

Shenzong found it prudent to send Wang Anshi to Jiangning, sheltered from the political uproar brewing in the capital Dongjing.

The next year Emperor Shenzong summoned Wang Anshi back to the capital to be the Chief Minister. A few months later, a comet was seen streaking across the sky. This is a common enough phenomenon but was considered a bad omen at the time. In a panic Emperor Shenzong solicited the views of his ministers on the running of the government. Conservative ministers jumped at the chance to renew their attack on the reforms. Despite Wang Anshi's best efforts to defend the reforms and to dissuade Emperor Shenzong from a superstitious interpretation of the comet, Emperor Shenzong remained undecided.

Unable to have his vision implemented, Wang Anshi once again resigned from his post as Chief Minister in the spring of 1076 AD, three years into his tenure, and returned to Jiangning.

11、司马光写《通鉴》

王安石罢相以后，宋神宗还把王安石定下的新法维持了将近十年。公元1085年，宋神宗病死，年才十岁的太子赵煦（音xu）即位，就是宋哲宗。哲宗年幼，由他祖母高太后临朝。高太后是一向反对新法的。她一临朝，就把反对新法最激烈的司马光召到东京担任宰相。

司马光是当时最有名望的大臣，陕州夏县（今山西夏县）人。他的名声，从他幼小的时候已经开始传开了。他七岁那年，就开始专心读书。不论是大伏暑天，还是数九寒冬，他都捧着书不放，有时候连吃饭喝水都忘了。他不但读书用功，而且很机灵。有一次，他跟小伙伴们在后院子里玩耍。院子里有一口大水缸，有个小孩爬到缸沿上，一不小心，掉到缸里。缸大水深，眼看那孩子快要没顶了。别的孩子们一见出了事，吓得一面哭喊，一面往外面跑，找大人来救。司马光不慌不忙，顺手从地上

11. Sima Guang Writes *Zi Zhi Tong Jian* (“Historical Events Retold as a Mirror for Government”)

After Wang Anshi's resignation, Emperor Shenzong maintained the reforms for nearly ten more years. In 1085 AD, he died of illness. He was succeeded by his ten-year-old son, Crown Prince Zhao Xu, who became Emperor Zhezong. Because of his young age, his grandmother Empress Dowager Gao ruled as his regent. A longtime opponent of reform, she invited Sima Guang, one of the fiercest foes of reform, to serve as the Chief Minister soon after she took over the reins of state.

Sima Guang, originally from Xia County of Shaanzhou (modern-day Xia County, Shanxi Province) was one of the most prominent ministers in the period. His fame began to spread at a very young age. At seven he was already an avid reader. In sweltering heat or freezing cold, he would keep on reading, sometimes forgetting to eat or drink. His zeal for books was matched by a nimble mind. One day he was playing with other kids in the backyard, where a big vat filled with water sat. A boy who climbed on the rim of the vat fell into the water and was on the point of drowning. Other kids cried in fright and ran to seek help from adults. Sima Guang calmly picked up a big rock and

捡起一块大石块，使尽力气朝水缸砸去。“砰”的一声，水缸破了，缸里的水流了出来，被淹在水里的小孩也得救了。

这件偶然的事情，使幼小的司马光出了名。东京和洛阳有人把这件事画成图画，广泛流传。

宋神宗在位的时候，司马光担任翰林学士。司马光和王安石本来是要好的朋友，后来王安石主张改革，司马光思想保守，两个人就谈不到一块儿去了。

王安石做了宰相以后，提出的一件件改革措施，司马光没有一件不反对。有一次，司马光向宋神宗提出要取消青苗法，同时，以老朋友的资格，写了一封信，责备王安石侵犯其他官员的职权，惹是生非，搜刮财富，还拒不接受别人的意见。

王安石写了一封回信，对司马光的四条责难针锋相对地作了反驳。信里说：我受皇上的命令，改革法制，怎能说我侵犯别人职权，为国家办事，怎能说我惹是生非，为天下理财，怎能说是搜刮财富；驳斥错误的言论，怎能说拒绝意见。

司马光接到回信，气得要命。但是眼看王安石有皇帝撑腰，也无可奈何。最后，他辞去朝廷职务，离开京城，到了洛阳，表示不愿过问政事，关起门来写书了。

原来，司马光对历史很有研究，他认为治理国家的人，一

hurled it at the vat, cracking it with a “pong”. As water emptied out of the broken vat, the drowning kid was saved.

The resourcefulness shown by him in this accident catapulted the young Sima Guang into instant fame. The deed was depicted in paintings widely circulated in Dongjing and Luoyang.

During the reign of Emperor Shenzong, Sima Guang was an Academician at the Hanlin Academy. He and Wang Anshi had been close friends, but the reform-minded Wang Anshi and the more conservative Sima Guang eventually parted ways. Every reform measure proposed by Wang Anshi as Chief Minister was invariably opposed by Sima Guang. Guang even petitioned Emperor Shenzong for the repeal of the Seedling Law. He once wrote a letter as an old friend to Wang Anshi, faulting him for usurping the role of other officials, rocking the boat, amassing wealth and refusing to heed advice.

In his reply to the letter, Wang Anshi refuted Sima Guang point by point. He wrote, “Since I have been pushing reform at the orders of the Emperor, you cannot accuse me of usurping others. I am doing all this in the interest of the country. I am not rocking the boat, as you alleged. I am getting the financial house of the country in order and not amassing any personal wealth as you charged. Challenging wrong ideas does not mean I do not heed advice.”

Sima Guang steamed when he read the reply. However, he could not do anything because Wang Anshi had the backing of the Emperor. He finally decided to resign from his post in the central government and leave the capital for Luoyang, where he announced he was giving up politics to devote his life to writing.

Sima Guang was a serious history buff. He believed that the ruling elite must be thoroughly versed in history, drawing lessons

定要通晓从古以来的历史，从历史中吸取兴盛、衰亡的经验教训。他又觉得，从上古到五代，历史书实在太多，做皇帝的人没有那么多时间看。于是，他很早就动手编写一本从战国到五代的史书。宋英宗在位的时候，他把一部分稿子献给朝廷。宋英宗觉得这本书对巩固王朝统治有好处，十分赞赏这项工作，专门为他设立一个编写机构，叫他继续编下去。

宋神宗即位以后，司马光又把编好的一部分献给宋神宗。

宋神宗并不信司马光的政治主张，但是对司马光编书却十分支持。他把自己年轻时候收藏的二千四百卷书都送给司马光，要他好好完成这部著作。还亲自为这本书起了个书名，叫《资治通鉴》（“资治”就是能帮助皇帝治理天下的意思）。

司马光罢官回到洛阳之后，就专心写《资治通鉴》，一共花了十九年时间，才把这部著作完成。这部书按历史年代编写，从公元前403年战国时代开始，到公元959年五代后周灭亡为止，包括一千三百六十二年的历史。

为了写这一部巨大篇幅的著作，司马光和他的助手们收集和整理了大量资料，除了采用历代的正史之外，还参看各种历

from the rise and fall of past dynasties. He believed that emperors simply lacked the time to read the plethora of historical accounts that had accumulated from ancient times to the Five Dynasties period, so early in his career he started to compile a history spanning the time between the Warring States period and the Five Dynasties period. During Emperor Yingzong's reign, he presented a partial draft to the central government. Emperor Yingzong greatly appreciated the work because he believed it would help consolidate his dynastic rule.

After the accession of Emperor Shenzong, Sima Guang presented another installment of his work to the Emperor. While not a subscriber to Sima Guang's political philosophy, Emperor Shenzong provided enthusiastic support to his writing project. He gave the 2,400 books he had collected since a young man to Sima Guang, and expressed the wish to see an excellent product from this endeavor. Emperor Shenzong even thought up a name for the work *Zi Zhi Tong Jian* ("Historical Events Retold as a Mirror for Government").

After leaving his government post, it took Sima Guang nineteen years of hard work in Luoyang to finally complete the *Zi Zhi Tong Jian*. He often worked late into the night, and the undertaking took a heavy toll on his health. By the completion of the book, he was very weak. His vision was blurred and most of his teeth were loose.

The book itself presents a panoramic history in chronological order, spanning the 1,362 years between 403 BC of the Warring States Period and 959 AD of the Five Dynasties Period. To write this epic work, Sima Guang and his assistants collected and sorted through large amounts of data and material. Besides official

史著作三百多种。据说，这部书写成的时候，原稿足足堆放了
两间屋子。它材料丰富，剪裁恰当，考证严格，而且文字精练生
动，所以成为中国史学史上最有价值的著作之一。它对于后来
的人研究历史，提供了比较完备的资料。

司马光在洛阳写了十多年书，但是因为他反对新法出了名，
一些保守的官员都很记住他。他虽然口口声声说不谈政治，但
是许多人还把他当作“真宰相”看待，连普通百姓也知道洛阳
住着一个司马相公。

高太后临朝执政，把司马光召回朝廷，司马光已经是又老
又病了。但是，他反对王安石新法却丝毫不肯放松。他一当上
宰相，第一件大事就是废除新法。有人劝阻他说，神宗刚刚去
世，马上把他的政治措施改掉，总不大好吧！司马光气呼呼地
说：“先皇帝立的法度，好的自然不要去改动，像王安石搞的那
一套，却是害民的事，为什么不能改？再说，现在高太后执政，
高太后是神宗的母亲，做母亲的改动儿子的主张，有什么不可
以？”

就这样，他不顾许多官员的反对，到了第二年（公元1086
年），就把王安石建立的新法一古脑儿废除了。王安石听到这个
消息，当然十分生气，不久就郁郁不乐地死去，而司马光的病
也越来越重，在同年九月咽了气。

government histories, they consulted more than 300 historical works of a less official nature. By the time of the book's completion, the manuscripts filled two entire rooms. Because of the wealth of material it was based on, its superb editing, rigorous textual research and the economy and vibrancy of its prose, it has become one of the most valuable works in the history of Chinese literature. It provides a wealth of information for students of history.

While he was writing his book, some conservative officials never forgot this man known for his fierce opposition to the reforms of Wang Anshi. Despite his professed abandonment of politics, many still considered him the "true Chief Minister". Even ordinary citizens knew there was a Lord Sima in Luoyang.

When the regent, Empress Dowager Gao, invited Sima Guang back to the central government, he was already a frail, sickly old man. However, even in this frail state, he had retained vigorous opposition to Wang Anshi's reforms. The first order of business for the new chief minister was to abolish them. To those who had concerns about the unseemly haste in abolishing the reforms so soon after the death of Emperor Shenzong, he replied angrily, "Good laws made by the late Emperor should naturally not be tampered with, but this stuff cooked up by Wang Anshi is a bane to society. Why can't we change it? Besides, Empress Dowager Gao is Emperor Shenzong's mother. What's to prevent a mother from changing her son's decisions?"

Overriding the opposition of many officials, he dumped all the reforms and laws instituted by Wang Anshi in 1086 AD. Wang Anshi was angered and saddened by the turn of events and soon died a heartbroken man. In September of the same year, the increasingly ill Sima Guang also died.

12、花石纲

高太后掌了八权利死去，由宋哲宗亲政。年轻的宋哲宗对他祖母重用保守派，本来就不满意。等到他亲自执政，就重新起用变法派。但是后来的变法派不像王安石那样真心实意改革朝政，内部纷争不休。一批投机分子打着变法的幌子，趁机捣乱。等宋哲宗一死，他的弟弟宋徽宗赵佶（音jì）即位后，朝政更加混乱。

宋徽宗是个出名的浪荡子，不懂得管理国家大事，专门寻欢作乐。他身边有个心腹宦官童贯，迎合他的心意，替他搜罗书画珍宝供他赏玩。有一次童贯到苏州一带去搜集书画珍宝，有个不得志的官员蔡京想投靠童贯，每天陪着童贯鬼混，还把他自己书写的屏风扇面等送给童贯。童贯得到蔡京的好处，把这些书画马上送到东京，并且捎话给宋徽宗，说他物色到一个少有的人才。

12. The Plants and Rocks Convoys

After eight years as regent, Empress Dowager Gao died and Emperor Zhezong took over the reins of state. The young Emperor had never agreed to his grandmother's empowerment of the conservatives. Once he got power, he brought the reformists back into government. However, the latter-day reformists lacked Wang Anshi's true devotion and were forever embroiled in factional squabbles, and opportunists stirred up trouble in the name of reform. When Emperor Zhezong was succeeded at his death by his younger brother Zhao Ji, as Emperor Huizong of the Northern Song Dynasty, the government was in worse shape than ever.

Emperor Huizong had a reputation of being a dissolute pleasure-seeker, uninterested and uninitiated in the art of governance. A trusted eunuch Tong Guan pandered to his propensities and scoured the country for artistic treasures, works of calligraphy and paintings for his viewing pleasure. One of Tong Guan's treasure-hunting trips took him to the Suzhou area, where he met an official called Cai Jing, who wanted to ingratiate himself with Tong Guan in order to improve his poor career prospects. He attended on Tong Guan, making him a gift of decorative screens and fans bearing his own calligraphy and paintings. To repay Cai Jing, Tong Guan immediately sent these on to Emperor Huizong in Dongjing, with a message that he had found a rare talent.

蔡京到了东京，又拉了一帮子人替他活动。有个官员对宋徽宗说：“推行新法是件大事，朝臣中是没有人能帮助办好这件事的。如果陛下要继承神宗的遗志，非用蔡京不可。”那个官员还画了一幅图献给宋徽宗，图表上列了大批朝臣名字，把保守派写在右面，把变法派写在左边。右边的名字都是当朝大臣，但左边的名单只有两个名字，其中一个就是蔡京。宋徽宗看了，满心喜欢，马上决定让蔡京当宰相。

蔡京一上台，就打起变法的旗帜，把一些正直的官员，不论是保守的或是赞成变法的，一律称作奸党。他还操纵宋徽宗在端礼门前立一块党人碑，把司马光、文彦博、苏轼、苏辙等一百二十人称做元祐（元祐是宋哲宗前期的年号）奸党，已经死了的削去官衔，活着的一律降职流放。这样一来，一些正直的官员就全部被排挤出朝，而蔡京的同伙却步步高升了。至于王安石制定的新法，到蔡京手里就完全变了样。像免役法本来可以

When Cai Jing was transferred to Dongjing, he got influential officials to lobby for him. An official said to Emperor Huizong, "Implementing reforms is a formidable task and none of the ministers in government can be depended on to make a success of it. If His Majesty really desires to take up the mantle of Emperor Shenzong and finish his unfinished business, then Cai Jing is your only hope." The official drew up a chart for the perusal of Emperor Huizong, which listed all the conservative ministers on the right and the reformists on the left. All the incumbent ministers were put in the right column and only two names figured in the left, Cai Jing being one of them. Delighted by Cai Jing's reformist credentials, Emperor Huizong immediately decided to make him Chief Minister.

Soon after taking office, in the name of reform Cai Jing proceeded to brand many honest, upright officials members of scheming cliques, regardless of their conservative or reformist inclination. Under his machinations, Emperor Huizong approved the erection of a marker in front of Duanli Gate bearing the names of members of the so-called Yuanyou Clique. This was a group of about 120 former and incumbent officials, including luminaries such as Sima Guang, Wen Yanbo, Su Shi and Su Zhe, who were alleged to have formed a clique during the Yuanyou Era of the reign of Emperor Zhezong. Those no longer alive were stripped of their former official titles, while those still alive were all demoted and sent into exile. After the ouster of large numbers of officials with integrity, Cai Jing and his ilk prospered in government. The reforms of Wang Anshi were distorted and adulterated by Cai Jing beyond recognition. While the original intent of the service exemption law was to reduce the burden on

减轻百姓的劳役负担，蔡京一伙却不断增加雇役的税收，使它变成敲榨人民的手段。

宋徽宗和蔡京又迷信道士，大造道观。有个道士叫林灵素，在宋徽宗面前胡吹说：天上有九霄，最高一层叫神霄，神霄宫有个玉清王，是上帝长子，宋徽宗就是上帝长子下凡。神霄宫还有仙官八百，蔡京、童贯就是仙官再世。这一番胡言乱语，居然把宋徽宗哄得心花怒放，天天请大批道士在宫中讲道。道士们还给宋徽宗献了个称号，叫教主道君皇帝。这一来，皇帝就成为道士头子了。

宋徽宗尽情追求享乐腐朽的生活。童贯替他在苏州、杭州两地征用几千名工匠，每天制作象牙、牛角、金银、竹藤的雕刻和织绣品，供他玩赏。所有制作材料，一律向百姓搜刮。日子一久，宋徽宗对那些玩艺儿腻了，想找一些奇花异石来换换口味。蔡京、童贯为了讨好宋徽宗，派了一个二流子朱勳，在苏州办了一个“应事局”，搜罗花石。朱勳手下养了一批差官，专门管这件事。听说哪个老百姓家有一块石头、一株花木比较精巧别

civilians, the exemption fees, which were constantly raised by Cai Jing and his partisans, became a tool of extortion.

Driven by a superstitious belief in Daoism, Emperor Huizong and Cai Jing embarked on the construction of large numbers of Daoist temples. A Daoist priest called Lin Lingsu told a story before Emperor Huizong, claiming that there were nine levels in the firmament, the highest of which was called God's Sphere, where King Yuqing, eldest son of the Supreme God, held court. According to him, Emperor Huizong was the supreme god's eldest son incarnate on Earth. There were eight hundred celestial officials in God's Sphere, and Cai Jing and Tong Guan were among these celestial officials incarnate on Earth. Emperor Huizong, flattered by this nonsense, invited droves of Daoists to the palace to give lectures. The Daoist gave Emperor Huizong the title Guru Daoist Emperor, which ostensibly made him its leader.

Emperor Huizong of the Northern Song Dynasty wallowed in decadence and indulged in pleasure seeking. Tong Guan commissioned thousands of craftsmen in Suzhou and Hangzhou to produce embroidery and handicrafts made of ivory, horn and rattan, for the sole pleasure of the Emperor. All the raw materials were of course taken from civilians without little or no compensation. As time went by, Emperor Huizong began to tire of these trinkets and sought the novelty of rare plants and rocks. Pandering to the Emperor's whims, Cai Jing and Tong Guan put a worthless man named Zhu Mian in charge of an agency called the Tributes Bureau, which existed for the express purpose of finding such rare flowers and rocks for the Emperor. Whenever the bailiffs in his employ got wind of any plant or rock of some novelty or rare beauty, they would bring soldiers with them to

致，差官就带了兵士闯进哪家，用黄封条一贴，算是进贡皇帝的东西，要百姓认真保管。如果有半点损坏，就要派他一个“大不敬”的罪名，轻的罚款，重的抓进监牢。有的人家被征的树木很高大，搬运起来不方便，兵士们就把那家的房子拆掉，墙壁毁了。那些差官、兵士乘机敲诈勒索，被征花石的人家，往往被逼得倾家荡产，有的人家卖儿卖女，到处逃难。

朱勔把搜刮来的花石，用大批船只运送到东京。运送的船只不够，就截劫运粮的船和商船，把船上货物倒掉，装运花石。这大批船只自然还要征用大量民伕，于是船只在江河里穿梭似地来往，民伕们为运送花石日夜奔忙。这种运送的队伍叫做“花石纲”。

花石纲一到东京，宋徽宗见了，果然高兴，给朱勔加官升职。花石纲越来越多，朱勔的官也越做越大。一些达官贵人，谁敢不讨朱勔的好？人们把朱勔主持的苏杭应奉局称作“东南小朝廷”，可见朱勔权力之大了。

the owner's home and slap a yellow ribbon on the object to designate it as a tribute to the Emperor. Until it reached the Emperor, the owner had to take good care of it, for objects suffering damage would cause the owner to be fined or even jailed for gross contempt. If a plant were too big or difficult to move, soldiers could dismantle a house or break down a wall to facilitate the removal of the plant. The bailiffs and the soldiers often used the occasion to extort money from the owners, some of whom were thus bankrupted and sometimes forced to sell their children.

Zhu Mian had these plants and rocks transported on ship after ship to Dongjing. When there were not enough ships, he would commandeered ships transporting grain or other cargo and dump their cargo to make room for the plants and rocks. The use of such a large number of ships naturally involved the conscription of civilian labor on a huge scale. The ships shuttled back and forth on the rivers, while conscripted laborers worked day and night for the transport of the plants and rocks. These were the so-called "Plants and Rocks Convoys".

When the first convoy of plants and rocks arrived in Dongjing, it pleased Emperor Huizong so much that he gave a raise and a promotion to Zhu Mian. Zhu Mian's political fortunes rose with ever more runs of the Plants and Rocks convoys, and those in the corridors of power scrambled to get into the good graces of Zhu Mian. As a testimony to the immense power wielded by Zhu Mian, his Tributes Bureau, which operated in Suzhou and Hangzhou, was given the nickname of "Court in Miniature in Southeast China" by his contemporaries.

13、方腊起义

花石纲把东南一带闹得昏天黑地，出产花石多的地方，百姓遭殃也最重。睦州青溪（今浙江淳安县）地方，出产各种花石竹木，朱勔的应奉局常常派差人到那里，搜刮花石。当地有个农民方腊，家里有个漆园。方腊平时靠这个园里的出产，日子勉强过得去。自从朱勔办了花石纲以后，方腊家也遭到勒索。方腊恨透那些官府差役，又看到当地农民兄弟受尽花石纲的苦，就决心把大家组织起来，造官府的反。

公元1120年的一天，几百个苦大仇深的农民聚集在方腊的漆园里，方腊激动地跟大家说：“国家好比一个家庭，如果一户人家，小辈整年劳动，好容易挣了一点粮食布帛，却被他们的父兄胡乱花费了。小辈稍为不称他们的心，就挨他们鞭打。你们说这应该不应该？”

大伙儿齐声回答说：“不应该！”

13. Fang La Rises in Rebellion

The Plants and Rocks Convoys were ruinous for the people in southeast China. Those who lived in areas that were abundant sources of the rare plants and rocks bore the brunt of the exploitation. One such place was Qingxi, Muzhou (modern-day Chun'an County, Zhejiang Province), whose richly diverse plants, rocks, bamboo and trees made it a target of frequent raiding parties sent by Zhu Mian's Tributes Bureau. A resident of the county by the name of Fang La, who eked out a subsistence selling the products of his lacquer trees, hated being victimized by the bailiffs extortion and plunder. When he saw the misery suffered by the other peasants of his county because of the Plants and Rocks Convoys, he decided to organize them in a rebellion.

One day in 1120 AD, several hundred angry, aggrieved peasants assembled in Fang La's garden and heard him give a passionate speech. He told the crowd heatedly, "The country is like a family. When the young in a family labor all year round to bring some food to the table and clothing for the backs of its members, only to see the fruit of their labor squandered by their elders, and receive lashes from these elders at their whim, would you consider it normal and justified?"

The crowd roared, "Not justified!"

Fang La went on to say, "Not content with squandering the family's resources, these elders ingratiate themselves with enemies of the family with gifts. Is it justified?"

The crowd answered with anger in their voice, "No! It's

方腊又说：“那些做父兄的浪费还不算，又拿家里财物去向敌人讨好求情，你们说该不该？”

大伙儿愤怒地回答说：“哪有这种理儿？”

方腊流着眼泪说：“现在官府赋税劳役那么重，那些大官们还要敲诈勒索。老百姓好容易生产了些漆、纸，也被他们搜刮得精光。我们一年到头劳苦，结果一家老小受冻挨饿，连一餐饱饭都吃不上，你们看怎么办？”

大伙儿听到这里，都高声嚷起来说：“请您下命令吧！我们听您的。”

方腊受到农民的拥护，就打起杀朱勔的旗号，发动起义。方腊担任起义军的统帅，自称“圣公”。将士们带着各色头巾，作为标志。愤怒的起义将士，杀死那里的官吏，焚烧他们的住宅。青溪附近一带的百姓都被官府害苦了，纷纷响应方腊起义军。不到十天，起义军就聚集了几万人马。

当地官军将领派兵镇压，被起义军打得落花流水，两名宋将被杀死。起义军乘胜攻进青溪县，赶跑了那儿的县官。接着，又接连打下几十座县城，很快打到了杭州。

警报传到东京，把宋徽宗吓昏了。宋徽宗赶快派童贯带领十五万官军到东南去镇压起义。

童贯到了苏州，知道花石纲引起的民愤太大，立刻用宋徽

unconscionable!"

With tears in his eyes, Fang La said, "With government levies and conscripted labor already weighing so heavily on the people, those bureaucrats want to extort still more money out of us. Any lacquer or paper produced by the sweat of our brow has gone to line their pockets. For our yearlong toil, all we get in return is hunger and cold for our families. What do you think we should do?"

The crowd gave a thunderous answer, "Give us your order and we will follow you!"

Having obtained the support of the peasants, Fang La raised a rebellion with "Death to Zhu Mian" as their battle cry. Fang La assumed personal command of the insurgent army, giving himself the title of Shenggong. His troops donned turbans of various colors for identification purposes. The angry insurgents killed government officials and burned down their houses. The residents in the Qingxi vicinity, all victims of the exactions of the bureaucracy, rallied to the rebels and in less than ten days a rebel army of tens of thousands of men had been formed.

The troops sent by the local government to put down the rebellion were soundly beaten, and two Song generals were killed in the action. Pressing their victory, the rebels pushed into the county seat of Qingxi and sent its magistrate on the run. Dozens of counties were taken by the insurgents in quick succession before they reached Hangzhou.

As news of the rebellion reached Dongjing, Emperor Huizong was scared senseless. He immediately sent Tong Guan at the head of 150,000 government troops to the southeast to quell the rebellion.

宗的名义下了一道诏书，承认错误，并且撤销了专办花石纲的“应奉局”，把朱勔撤职。

东南的百姓看到朝廷取消了花石纲，罢免了朱勔，总算出了一口气。哪儿知道童贯正在这时候，加紧部署镇压起义的兵力呢。

童贯集中各路大军进攻，方腊不得不退回青溪，据守在山谷深处的帮源洞坚持战斗。官军不知道山路，没法进攻。就在这个节骨眼上，起义军里出了奸细，给官军引路。官军终于摸到帮源洞，方腊没有防备，被俘虏了。没多久，被押解到东京，惨遭杀害。

方腊起义虽然失败了，但是给了北宋王朝一次沉重的打击。这时候，在北方也爆发了大规模的起义，起义领袖宋江等三十

When Tong Guan arrived in Suzhou, he realized the magnitude of the popular anger at the Plants and Rocks Convoys and immediately issued an edict in the Emperor's name accepting blame, abolished the Tributes Bureau, and firing Zhu Mian.

The people of southeast China felt vindicated and somewhat placated by the cancellation of the convoys and the removal of Zhu Mian, little suspecting that Tong Guan was in that same moment actively deploying troops for the suppression of the insurgency.

In the face of the attack by a concentrated force organized by Tong Guan, Fang La's army was forced back to Qingxi, where he entrenched his troops in Bangyuan Caverns deep in a valley and settled down for a long resistance. The government troops, which were unfamiliar with the mountainous terrain, could not launch an immediate attack. Nevertheless, with the help of a traitor in the insurgents' ranks who guided the government troops to Bangyuan Caverns, Fang La was caught completely off guard and captured. He was taken to Dongjing, where he was killed.

Although the rebellion led by Fang La ended in failure, it was a heavy blow to the Northern Song Dynasty. In the same period a large scale uprising had also erupted in the north, which began with some thirty six men in Hebei led by Song Jiang, fighting a mobile war between Qingzhou, Qizhou and Puzhou (all in modern

六人从河北起兵，在青州、齐州、濮州（都在今山东省）流动作战，打得官军心惊胆颤，一听到他们打来就跑。

在山东梁山泊，也发生渔民起义。据说宋江的起义军也到过梁山泊。后来民间流传的“梁山泊好汉”“一百零八将”的故事，就是根据他们的事迹发展起来的。到了元朝末年明朝初年，小说家施耐庵把梁山泊农民起义的传说加工写成长篇小说《水浒传》（浒音 hú），成功地塑造了林冲、鲁智深、武松等许多梁山英雄好汉的艺术形象，成为中国文学史上的经典名著。

day Shandong Province). They struck terror in the hearts of government troops, who often fled before their attack.

An uprising by fishermen also broke out at Liangshan Lake in Shandong. It is said that the insurgents of Song Jiang had been to Liangshan Lake. Two stories widely circulated since that time, "The Bunch of Good Men in Liangshan Lake" and the "Story of the One Hundred Eight Commanders", were based on the deeds of these rebels. During the period spanning the last years of the Yuan Dynasty and the early years of the Ming Dynasty, the novelist Shi Nai'an expanded the assorted legends surrounding the rebellions of the peasants of Liangshan Lake into an epic novel entitled *Heroes of the Water Margin*. This immortalized in artistic form the many heroes of Liangshan Lake, including but not limited to Lin Chong, Lu Zhishen and Wu Song, and become one of the masterpieces of Chinese literature.

14、头鱼宴上的阿骨打

童贯镇压了方腊起义没多久，东北的金朝派人到东京，催促北宋攻打燕京，夹攻辽朝。

原来，辽朝经过了几次内乱和各族人民起义力量的打击，渐渐腐朽衰落。在这时期，我国东北地区的女真族（我国古代少数民族之一）逐渐强大起来。女真人民长期受辽朝贵族的统治和压榨，早就产生了强烈的反抗情绪。

公元1112年的春天，辽天祚（音 zuò）帝耶律延禧到东北春州（在今吉林省）巡游，兴致勃勃地在混同江（今松花江）捕鱼，并且命令当地的女真各部酋长都到春州朝见。

按照当地风俗，在每个春季最早捉到的鱼，要先给死去的祖先上供，并且摆酒宴庆祝。这一年，辽天祚帝在春州举行了头鱼宴，请酋长们喝酒。辽天祚帝几杯酒下肚，有了几分醉意，叫酋长们给他跳舞。那些酋长虽然不愿意，但是不敢违抗命令，就挨个儿离开座位，跳起民族舞蹈来。

接下去轮到一个人，他神情冷漠，两眼直瞪瞪地望着

14. Aguda's Defiance at the Fish Feast

Shortly after Tong Guan's suppression of Fang La's rebellion, an emissary of the Jin Dynasty was dispatched to Dongjing to urge the Northern Song Dynasty to attack Yanjing as part of a two-flanked campaign against the Liao Dynasty.

The Liao Dynasty had been weakened by a succession of civil disturbances and rebellions by other ethnic groups. The Jurchens (called the Nüzhen in Chinese, and later known as the Manchus) grew in strength. In their long years under the yoke of the Liao aristocracy, the oppressed Jurchen had developed a strong anti-Liao sentiment.

In the spring of 1112 AD, Yelü Yanxi, Emperor Tianzuo of the Liao Dynasty, went on a tour to Chunzhou (in modern-day Jilin Province), where he enjoyed himself fishing on the Huntong River (the modern-day Songhua River), and convoked the chieftains of all Jurchen tribes to pay homage to him.

As a local custom, every spring the first catch on the river had to be sacrificed to their ancestors in a big feast, so Emperor Tianzuo of the Liao Dynasty invited the chieftains to a fish feast in Chunzhou. After a few rounds of wine, a slightly drunk Emperor Tianzuo ordered the chieftains to dance for him. Afraid to disobey this intensely resented order, the chieftains left their seats one after another to perform some Jurchen folk dances.

When it was the turn of one young man, he remained rooted

天祚帝，一动也不动。这个青年就是女真族完颜部酋长乌雅束的儿子，名叫阿骨打。

辽天祚帝见阿骨打居然敢当着大家的面顶撞他，很不高兴，一再催他跳，一些酋长怕他得罪天祚帝，也从旁劝他。可是不管好说歹说，阿骨打拿定主意不跳，叫天祚帝下不了台阶。

这场头鱼宴闹得不欢而散。辽天祚帝当场没发作，散席之后，他跟大臣萧奉先说：“阿骨打这小子这样跋扈，实在使人没法容忍。不如趁早杀了他，免得发生后患。”

萧奉先认为阿骨打没有大过失，杀了他怕引起其他酋长的不满，就说：“他是个粗人，不懂得礼节，不值得跟他计较。就算他有什么野心，小小一个部落，也成不了气候。”

辽天祚帝觉得萧奉先说得有道理，也就把这件事搁在一边。

阿骨打当然不是不会跳舞，他是个性格刚强的人。多年来对辽朝贵族欺负女真人民，早就不满。现在，眼看辽朝越来越腐败，就决心自立门户。

不久，阿骨打的父亲乌雅束死去，阿骨打继任完颜部首领，他建筑城堡，修理武器，训练人马，逐步统一了女真各部，准备反辽。

where he sat, fixing a cold glare on Emperor Tianzuo. He was Aguda, the son of Wuyashu, chieftain of the Wanyan tribe of the Jurchen.

Upset by Aguda's public defiance, Emperor Tianzuo insisted that he perform a dance. Some chieftains also urged him to comply for fear that his continued balking would anger the Emperor. However, Aguda was not to be budged, putting Emperor Tianzuo in an awkward position.

The fish feast ended on a sour note. Although he refrained from exploding at the banquet, Emperor Tianzuo said to his minister Xiao Fengxian after the feast, "The arrogant defiance of Aguda is intolerable. Let's kill him before he turns into a future threat."

Believing that Aguda had committed no egregious offense and killing him would antagonize the other chieftains, Xiao Fengxian said, "He is an uncouth, ill-mannered person. It's not worth His Majesty's while to lose sleep over him. Even if he harbors some ambition, a chieftain of a small tribe like him will never amount to much."

Finding Xiao Fengxian's analysis to make sense, Emperor Tianzuo of Liao put the incident behind him.

Aguda's refusal to dance certainly was not out of any lack of dancing skill. Rather, he was strong-willed, and had long resented the Liao aristocracy's oppression of the Jurchens. As he saw the decay and decline of the Liao Dynasty, he made up his mind to strike.

When Wuyashu, his father, died shortly thereafter, Aguda succeeded him as chieftain of the Wanyan tribe. He built fortifications, upgraded weapons and put his soldiers through

辽天祚帝得知阿骨打备战，一面派使者到阿骨打那里去责问，一面调动河北几路人马到东北威胁。

阿骨打对部下说：“现在辽人快要动手了，我们要先发制人，免得被动。”他集中女真各部骑兵二千五百人，亲自率领袭击辽朝。辽将没有准备，狼狈奔逃。辽天祚帝得知消息，立刻派大军镇压，在混同江边，遭到阿骨打骑兵的痛击。女真兵乘胜追击，兵力发展到一万人。

公元1115年，阿骨打在会宁（今黑龙江阿城南）正式称帝，国号大金。他就是金太祖。

金太祖即位后，攻打辽朝东北重镇黄龙府（今吉林农安县）。辽天祚帝派了二十多万步兵、骑兵到东北去防守，被金兵打得大败，连武器、耕具都丢得精光。辽天祚帝想跟金朝讲和，金太祖可不答应，指名道姓要辽天祚帝投降。

辽天祚帝恼羞成怒，组织兵力七十万，亲自带领到黄龙府去。

金太祖命令将士筑好营垒，挖掘壕沟，准备抵抗。正在这

rigorous training. In preparation for war with the Liao Dynasty, he embarked on a systematic integration of the various Jurchen tribes.

When Emperor Tianzuo of the Liao Dynasty learned of Aguda's war preparations, he sent an emissary to challenge Aguda, and deployed several armies from Hebei to the northeast as a deterrent.

Aguda said to his officers, "The Liao will soon make the move. We need to strike first." He put together a cavalry of 2,500 men and led it in an attack against the Liao. The Liao general was caught by surprise and fled in defeat. When Emperor Tianzuo received news of the attack, he immediately sent a massive army to quash it. His troops were soundly beaten by Aguda's cavalry, which swelled to 10,000 as it pursued the crumbling Liao troops.

In 1115 AD, Aguda proclaimed himself Emperor in Huining (south of modern-day Acheng, Heilongjiang Province) with the Dynasty name of the Great Jin. He gave himself the title of Emperor Taizu of Jin Dynasty.

After his accession, Emperor Taizu of the Jin Dynasty launched an attack against Huanglong (modern day Nongan County, Jilin Province), a strategic town in the northeast of Liao territory. The 200,000-strong infantry sent by Emperor Tianzuo of the Liao Dynasty to defend its northeast was routed by the Jin army, abandoning all their weapons and farming implements. When Emperor Tianzuo made peace overtures, Emperor Taizu refused, insisting instead on Emperor Tianzuo's surrender.

Angered by this humiliation, Emperor Tianzuo led a 700,000-strong army on a march to Huanglong.

As Emperor Taizu was in the midst of building earthworks and digging trenches in preparation for battle, Emperor Tianzuo

这个时候，辽朝发生内乱，辽天祚帝下令撤兵。金太祖趁机追击，几十万辽军一下就垮了下来。辽天祚帝一天一夜逃了几百里，才算保住了一条命。

这时候，辽朝兵力大部丧失，北方人民不满辽朝贵族的统治，纷纷起义。

有人向宋徽宗提议，辽朝快要灭亡，收复北方燕云失地，这可是个好机会。宋徽宗派人从山东渡海，前往金朝会见金太祖，表示愿意夹攻辽朝。双方约定灭掉辽朝之后，北宋收回后晋时期割让给辽朝的燕云十六州失地，北宋把每年送给辽朝的银、绢，如数转送给金朝，历史上把这件事称作“海上之盟”。

金兵向南进攻，接连攻下了辽朝四座京城。还留下一个燕京，按照双方约定，应该由宋军攻打。

童贯刚刚镇压了方腊起义军，就带领十五万大军赶到北方，攻打燕京。他满以为辽兵的主力已经被金军消灭，打下燕京可

suddenly retreated because an internal dispute had erupted within the Liao government. Emperor Taizu ordered his army to keep the retreating enemy in hot pursuit, and the Liao army of hundreds of thousands crumbled in short order. Emperor Tianzuo fled to safety after riding hundreds of miles, day and night.

By that time the Liao had seen its fighting force largely neutralized. The people in the north, restive under the yoke of the Liao aristocracy, now rose up in revolt.

A suggestion was made to Emperor Huizong of the Northern Song Dynasty that the imminent collapse of the Liao Dynasty offered an opportunity to recover lost territory in the Yanzhou and Yunzhou regions. Emperor Huizon sent an envoy across the sea from Shandong to meet with Emperor Taizu of the Jin Dynasty to convey his readiness to join the Jin in a two-pronged attack against the Liao. The two sides agreed that after the quashing of the Liao Dynasty, the Northern Song would get back the sixteen regions of Yanzhou and Yunzhou ceded to the Liao in the Later Jin period, and the Jin Dynasty would get the same annual gifts of silk and silver the Liao Dynasty used to receive from the Northern Song Dynasty. This is known to Chinese history as the "Pact on the Sea".

In its southward drive, the Jin army captured four Liao cities, leaving Yanjing to be captured by the Song army, as stipulated in the agreement.

Fresh after his suppression of the insurgency of Fang La, Tong Guan led a 150,000 strong army northward to attack Yanjing. He fully expected the taking of Yanjing to be easy because the main force of the Liao had been defeated by the Jin army. When the weakened Liao army turned out to be was still very much superior

以不费多大劲儿。哪知道辽兵虽然虚弱，比宋军还强得多。童贯一连打了两次败仗，不但燕京没有收复，而且损兵折将，把多年以来积存的粮草、武器全都丢光。

童贯为了逃避失败的责任，暗地派人请金军攻燕京。金军一举拿下了燕京，不肯还给北宋。童贯只好答应把燕京的租税每年一百万贯钱献给金朝，才把燕京赎了回来。

这一来，北宋王朝的腐朽可让金朝看穿了。公元1125年，金太祖的弟弟金太宗完颜晟（音sheng）派兵追杀辽天祚帝，灭了辽朝。接着发兵南下，把进攻矛头转向北宋王朝。

to the Song army, he was unprepared. Tong Guan lost two battles in a row, but still had not taken back Yanjing. Worse, he suffered heavy casualties and lost all the weapons, grain and feed he had been able to accumulate through the years.

In an attempt to avoid blame, Tong Guan sent a secret emissary to the Jin general asking the Jin army to capture Yanjing for him. Once the Jin army took Yanjing, it refused to hand it over to the Northern Song. It was only after Tong Guan promised the Jin a million strings of copper coins a year from the tax revenue of Yanjing that Yanjing was given back to him.

This episode opened the eyes of the Jin Dynasty to the corrupt culture pervading the Song government. In 1125 AD, Wanyan Sheng, Emperor Taizong of the Jin Dynasty, younger brother of Emperor Taizu, sent his troops after Emperor Tianzuo, killing him and destroying the Liao Dynasty. Soon he directed his attack southward against the Northern Song Dynasty.

15、李纲守东京

金太宗灭了辽朝之后，借口宋朝收留了一名辽朝逃亡的将领，分兵两路进攻北宋。西路由宗翰（又名粘罕）率领，攻打太原；东路由宗望（又名斡离不，斡音 wò）率领，攻打燕京。两路大军约定在东京会师。

前线的告急文书像雪片一样飞到北宋朝廷。金太宗又派出使者到东京，胁迫北宋割地称臣。宋朝文武大臣吓得不知该怎么办，只有太常少卿（掌管礼乐和祭祀的官）李纲坚决主张抵抗金兵。

东路金兵攻下燕京，宋将郭药师投降。金将宗望叫郭药师做向导，领兵南下，直取东京。

宋徽宗看到形势危险，又气又急，拉住一个大臣的手说：“唉，没想到金人会这样对待我。”话没说完，一口气塞住喉咙，昏厥过去，倒在床上。大臣们手忙脚乱地把他扶起，把太医请

15. Li Gang Defends the Capital

After conquering the Liao Dynasty, Emperor Taizong of the Jin Dynasty launched a two-pronged attack against the Northern Song Dynasty on the pretext that it had harbored a fugitive Liao general. Zonghan led the attack against Taiyuan from the west, while Zongwang attacked Yanjing from the east. The two armies were to subsequently converge on Dongjing.

The court of the Northern Song Dynasty was swamped by a steady stream of bad news and urgent appeals for reinforcement from the front. Emperor Taizong sent a delegation to Dongjing to pressure the Northern Song Dynasty to cede territory and submit to the Jin Dynasty. As the entire court of civil officials and military officers was petrified with fear, one man, Li Gang, Deputy Chamberlain for Ceremonies (in charge of rites and sacrifices), came out strongly for resisting the aggressor.

The Jin army attacking Yanjing from the east took the city, and Guao Yaoshi, the Song general defending it, surrendered. Making Guao Yaoshi his guide, the Jin commander Zongwang took the Jin army south, directly threatening Dongjing.

In the face of the critical turn of events, the angry and flustered Emperor Huizong grabbed the hand of a minister and lamented, "I never thought the Jin would do this to me." Before he had time to finish what he was going to say, he choked on his words and fainted, falling in his couch. The ministers scrambled to prop him up, finally resuscitating him with the help of the imperial physician who administered medicine to him. Asking

来灌药急救，总算把他教醒过来。他向左右侍从要了纸笔，写下了“传位东宫”的诏书，宣布退位。不久，他带着二万亲兵逃出东京，到亳州（今安徽亳县，亳音 bó）避难去了。

太子赵桓即位，就是宋钦宗。宋钦宗把李纲提升为兵部侍郎，并且下诏亲自讨伐金兵。其实，宋钦宗并不比他父亲强多少，他做了一番表面文章，心里却七上八下没主意呢。

宋军在前线接连打败仗，东京吃紧起来，宰相白时中、李邦彦两人劝宋钦宗逃跑，宋钦宗也动摇了。

李纲得知这个消息，立刻求见宋钦宗，说：“太上皇（指宋徽宗）传位给皇上，正是希望陛下能留守京城，陛下怎么能走呢？”

宋钦宗还没开口，宰相白时中先搭了腔，说：“敌军声势浩大，哪能守得住？”

李纲驳斥说：“天下的城池，没有比京城更坚固的。再说，京城是国家的中心，文武百官集中在这里，只要皇上督率抗战，哪有守不住的道理？”

旁边有个宦官也唧唧喳喳说东京的城池不牢固，抵挡不住

his attendants for brush and paper, he wrote an edict announcing his abdication in favor of the Crown Prince. Shortly afterwards, he fled Dongjing under the guard of 20,000 troops loyal to him to the safety of Bozhou (modern-day Bo County, Anhui Province).

Crown Prince Zhao Huan ascended the throne as Emperor Qinzong of the Northern Song Dynasty. Emperor Qinzong promoted Li Gang to Director of the Ministry of War and issued an edict announcing he was personally leading an expedition against the Jin army. While he went through the motions and put up a brave face, Emperor Qinzong was not much better than his father, and was at a loss as to what to do.

As the Song army suffered one defeat after another and the threat to Dongjing became more palpable, Chief Ministers Bai Shizhong and Li Bangyan urged Emperor Qinzong to flee the capital. The emperor began to waver.

When this situation came to Li Gang's knowledge, he immediately went to see Emperor Qinzong and said to him, "The Super-Emperor (meaning Emperor Huizong) abdicated in His Majesty's favor in the expectation that His Majesty would defend the dynastic capital. How can His Majesty think of leaving?"

Before Emperor Qinzong could reply, the Chief Minister Bai Shizhong answered, "There is no way the capital can be defended against such overwhelming enemy forces."

Li Gang challenged the assessment: "There is no other city as impregnable as the capital. Besides, the capital is the center of the state, with the highest concentration of its civil and military elite. If the Emperor personally leads the fight, there's no reason the capital can't be defended successfully."

An attending eunuch grumbled that Dongjing was not strong

金兵进攻，宋钦宗叫李纲视察城池。李纲去了一会，回来说：“我视察过了，城楼又高又坚固，护城河虽然浅狭一些，只要安下精兵强弩，不愁守不住。”接着，他还提出许多防守措施，要钦宗团结军民，共同坚守，等各地援军到来，就组织反攻。

宋钦宗还有点犹豫，说：“那么，谁能担当守城的重任呢？”

李纲把目光向大臣们扫视了一下，说：“国家平时用高官厚禄供养官员，就是为了危急的时候要大家出力。白时中、李邦彦身为宰相，应当担当起守城的责任。”

白时中、李邦彦在旁边听了，急得直翻白眼。白时中气急败坏地嚷道：“李纲你说得好听！你能打仗吗？”

李纲神色从容地说：“如果陛下不嫌我没有能耐，派臣带兵守城，臣甘愿用生命报答国家！”

宋钦宗看李纲态度坚决，就派他负责全线防守。

白时中等和一批宦官并不死心，等李纲一走，又偷偷劝钦宗逃跑。第二天一早，李纲上朝的时候，只见禁军列队在皇宫两边，车马仪仗都已经准备停当，只等钦宗上车出发。

enough to resist the attack of the Jin army. Emperor Qinzong told Li Gang to tour the city walls to assess their solidity. After making an inspection, Li Gang reported, "The city gates are tall and solid. The moats are not deep enough, but we can manage with elite troops and archers." He went on to lay out tactics for defense, and asked Emperor Qinzong to rally the people and the military around him to resolutely defend the capital until the arrival of reinforcements, when a counterattack could be launched.

Still not totally convinced, Emperor Qinzong asked, "Who can be entrusted with the defense of the city?"

Li Gang glanced around at the ministers before replying, "The government has awarded high salaries and positions to high officials so that they can pay it back at times of crisis like this. Bai Shizhong and Li Bangyan, being Chief Ministers, should have the chief responsibility of defending the capital."

As he spoke, Bai Shizhong and Li Bangyan kept rolling their eyes in despair. Bai Shizhong finally lost his patience and protested loudly, "Li Gang! It's easy for you to say. Do you know how to fight?"

Li Gang said with composure, "If His Majesty trusts me and orders me to lead the defense, I am ready to repay my country with my life."

Emperor Qinzong was moved by Li Gang's determination and decided to have him oversee the defense of the capital.

As soon as Li Gang turned his back, Bai Shizhong and a group of eunuchs again privately lobbied Emperor Qinzong to flee the capital. Early the next morning, on his way to an imperial audience Li Gang saw the imperial guards flanking the palace and carriages

李纲大为恼火，厉声对禁军将士说：“你们到底愿意守卫京城，还是想逃跑？”

将士们齐声回答说：“愿意保卫京城！”

李纲和禁军将领一起进宫，对宋钦宗说：“禁军将士的家属都在东京，不愿离开。如果强迫他们走，万一半路上逃散，敌人追来，谁来保护皇上？”宋钦宗一听逃跑也有风险，才不得不留下来。

李纲立刻出宫向大家宣布：“皇上已经决定留守京城，以后谁再提逃跑，一律处斩。”兵士们听了，激动地欢呼起来。

李纲稳住了宋钦宗，就积极准备防守，在京城四面都布置好强大兵力，配备好各种防守的武器，还派出一支精兵到城外保护粮仓，防止敌人偷袭。

过了三天，宗望率领的金兵已经到了东京城下。他们用几十条火船，从上游顺流而下，准备火攻宣泽门。李纲招募敢死队兵士二千人，在城下列队防守。金军火船一到，兵士们就用

with imperial trappings waiting for Emperor Qinzong.

Li Gang was furious. He said in a stern voice to the imperial army officers and soldiers, "Are you ready to defend the capital or are you running away?"

The troops replied in unison, "We are ready to defend the capital!"

Li Gang then took the imperial army officers with him into the palace and said to Emperor Qinzong, "The officers and men of the imperial army are reluctant to leave Dongjing because they have their family here. If they are compelled to go, some of them might try to desert later. When that happens, who's going to protect His Majesty against the enemy troops?" Realizing that running away also involved risks, Emperor Qinzong thought the better of it.

Li Gang immediately went outside with the announcement, "The Emperor has decided to stay and defend the capital. Anyone who mentions running away again will be beheaded." A loud cheer went up from the soldiers.

After he succeeded in making up Emperor Qinzong's mind, Li Gang plunged into active preparations for war, deploying troops around the city and erecting defenses. He also dispatched an elite force out of the city to protect the granaries against surprise attack.

Three days later, the Jin army led by Zongwang came to the foot of the city walls. Relying on dozens of boats filled with flammable materials upriver, they planned to storm Xuanze Gate with flaming boats sailing downstream. Li Gang recruited a squad of 2,000 fearless men to defend the gate. When the flaming boats unleashed by the Jin army came close, these soldiers used

挠钩钩住敌船，使它没法接近城墙。李纲又派兵士从城上用大石块向火船投掷，石块像冰雹一样泻了下来，把火船打沉了，金兵纷纷落水。

宗望眼看东京城防坚固，一下子攻不下来，就派人通知北宋，答应讲和。宋钦宗和李邦彦一伙人早想求和，立刻派出使者到金营谈判议和条件。

宗望一面向北宋提出苛刻条件，一面加紧攻城。李纲亲自登上城楼，指挥作战。金兵用云梯攻城，李纲就命令弓箭手射箭，金兵纷纷应弦倒下。李纲又派几百名勇士沿着绳索吊到城下，烧毁了金军的云梯，杀死了几十名金将。金兵被杀死的、落水淹死的不计其数。

grappling hooks to immobilize the boats and keep them from coming too close to the walls. Li Gang had his soldiers on the embattlements hurl large rocks at the flaming boats. Pelted by the raining rocks, the flaming boats sank, sending the Jin sailors into the river.

Realizing the impossibility of a quick capture of the impregnable capital, Zongwang sent an emissary to inform the Northern Song Dynasty of his readiness for peace talks. This was what Emperor Qinzong and Li Bangyan and company had been longing for, and they immediately dispatched a delegation to the Jin camp to negotiate the terms of the peace accord.

Zongwang stonewalled by setting forth harsh conditions while intensifying his attacks against the city. Li Gang directed the battles on the battlements. When the Jin troops tried to scale the walls with ladders, he ordered his archers to unleash a shower of arrows, sending Jin soldiers tumbling off the ladders. Then a few hundred braves sent by Li Gang slid down ropes to destroy the ladders of the Jin army and killed dozens of Jin generals and officers. Countless numbers of Jin soldiers were either killed or drowned in the river.

16、两个皇帝当俘虏

过了十天，各地救援东京的宋军陆续到了城外，共有二十万人，东京守军士气振奋，金将宗望被迫退兵。

金兵退走以后，宋钦宗和一批大臣以为从此可以过太平日子了。他们把宋徽宗接回东京。李纲一再提醒宋钦宗要加强军备，防止金军再次进攻，可是每次提出来，总受到一些投降派大臣的阻挠。宋钦宗也嫌李纲噜苏。

哪料到东路的宗望刚退兵，西路的宗翰率领的金兵却不肯罢休，加紧攻打太原。宋钦宗派大将种师中带兵援救，半路上被金兵包围，种师中兵败牺牲。投降派大臣正嫌李纲留在京城碍事，就撺掇宋钦宗把李纲派到河北去指挥作战。

一些正直的大臣认为朝廷不该在这个时候让李纲离开京城，但是宋钦宗却硬要把李纲调走。

李纲明知道自己遭到排挤，但是要他上前线抗金，他也不

16. Two Emperors Are Taken Prisoner

Ten days later, Song reinforcements arrived from various places, totaling 200,000 men. This galvanized the morale of the Dongjing defenders and forced the withdrawal of the Jin army led by Zongwang.

After the withdrawal of the Jin army, Emperor Qinzong and many of his ministers believed they could now live in peace. They brought Emperor Huizong back to Dongjing. Li Gang constantly reminded Emperor Qinzong of the need to increase military preparedness against future Jin attacks, but his proposals were invariably opposed by defeatist ministers. Emperor Qinzong also faulted Li Gang for his nagging.

However, while Zongwang had withdrawn his eastern army, the western army led by Zonghan had persisted, and had even intensified its attack against Taiyuan. An army sent to relieve Taiyuan led by General Chong Shizhong was encircled and defeated by the Jin army before reaching its destination, and Chong Shizhong died in battle. At the same time, the defeatist ministers found Li Gang's presence in the capital inconvenient to them, so they lobbied Emperor Qinzong to send Li Gang to Hebei to prosecute the war there. Some honest and upright ministers expressed the view that this was not the time to send Li Gang away but Emperor Qinzong insisted.

Li Gang knew he was being pushed out, but he was happy to

愿推辞。钦宗拨给他一万二千人，他向朝廷请求拨军饷银、绢、钱各一百万，朝廷只给了二十万。李纲想做好准备工作再走，宋钦宗嫌他拖拉，一再催促，李纲只好匆匆出兵。

李纲到了河阳，招兵买马，修整武器。但是朝廷却命令他解散招来的新兵，立刻前去太原。李纲调兵遣将，分三路进兵，但是，那里的将领直接受朝廷指挥，根本不听李纲的调度。三路人马没统一指挥，结果打了一个大败仗。

李纲名义上是统帅，实际上没有指挥权，只好向朝廷提出辞职。投降派又攻击他专门主张抗金，打起仗来却损兵折将。宋钦宗把李纲撤了职，贬谪到南方去了。

金朝君臣最怕李纲，现在李纲罢了官，他们就没有顾忌了。金太宗又命令宗翰、宗望进攻东京。

这时候，太原城已经被宗翰的西路军围困了八个月。太原守将王禀率领军民坚决抵抗，金兵用尽一切办法攻城，都被王禀打退。日子一久，城里断了粮，兵士把牛马、骡子杀了充饥，牛马吃完了，就把弓箭上的皮革煮来吃。老百姓天天吃野草、糠

fight the Jin Dynasty on the frontline. He was given 12,000 men by Emperor Qinzong. However, when he requested silver, silk and money to pay his men, the government approved one fifth of the requested amount. Then when Li Gang asked for time to prepare his force, Emperor Qinzong prodded him to set out at once, before his force had been properly prepared.

When Li Gang reached Heyang, he stopped there to recruit more men and to have his soldiers prepare their weapons. However, the central government ordered him to disband his new recruits and to rush toward Taiyuan. Li Gang tried to put together a three-pronged attack but the local commanders only recognized the authority of the central government and totally ignored Li Gang's orders. The three contingents were routed for lack of an integrated command.

Although he was the nominal Commander-in-Chief, Li Gang had no authority to go with the title. When he offered his resignation, the defeatists lambasted him for being hawkish and yet incurring heavy casualties on the battlefield. Emperor Qinzong fired him and sent him in exile to the south of China.

Li Gang was the most feared nemesis of the Jin Emperor and his court. With Li Gang out of the Song government they now had a clear field. Emperor Taizong lost no time in ordering Zonghan and Zongwang to attack Dongjing.

By that time, Taiyuan had been under siege for eight months by the western army of Zonghan. Wang Bing, the commander of the Taiyuan defenses, led its inhabitants and the military in a fierce resistance. All artifices used by the Jin army to storm the city had been beaten back by Wang Bing. As the siege dragged on, the city ran out of food and the troops killed cattle, horses and mules to

皮，没有一个人投降。最后，太原城终于被金兵攻破。王禀带着饥饿的兵士跟金兵巷战之后，自己跳到汾水里牺牲。

太原失守之后，两路金兵继续南下。各路宋军将领听到东京吃紧，主动带兵前来援救。宋钦宗和一些投降派大臣忙着准备割地求和，竟命令各路援军退回原地。

这时候，在黄河南岸防守的宋军还有十二万步兵和一万骑兵。宗翰的西路军到了黄河北岸，不敢强渡。到了夜里，他们虚张声势，派兵士打了一夜战鼓。南岸的宋军听到对岸鼓声，以为金兵要渡河进攻，纷纷丢了营寨逃命，十三万宋军一下子逃得精光。宗翰没动一刀一枪，就顺利地渡过了黄河。

宗望率领的东路，也攻下大名（今河北大名），渡河南下。两路金兵不断向东京逼近，把宋钦宗吓昏了。一些投降派大臣又成天向宋钦宗嘀咕，说除了求和之外，没有别的出路。宗钦宗只好派他弟弟康王赵构到宗望那里去求和。

assuage their hunger. When all the cattle and horses were eaten, the soldiers boiled the leather used on their bows for food. The civilians fed on wild grass and grain husks. However, no one contemplated surrender. Taiyuan was finally taken by force. After leading his hungry soldiers in a hopeless house-to-house fight, Wang Bing jumped to his death into the Fenshui River.

After the fall of Taiyuan, the two Jin armies resumed their southward march towards Dongjing. When the Song generals stationed away from the capital came of their own accord to the rescue of the imperiled capital, Emperor Qinzong and his defeatist ministers sent the reinforcements back to where they came from, as they were eager to offer a land-for-peace deal.

At this time there were still 120,000 Song infantrymen and 10,000 cavalymen defending Song territory along the south bank of the Yellow River. When Zonghan's western army reached the north bank of the river, he did not want to take the risk of a forced crossing. After dark, the Jin troops beat their war drums through the night, creating a sense of imminent attack. The Song defenders on the south bank were led by the drum rolls to believe the Jin army was on the point of crossing the river, and all 130,000 of them fled in haste. Zonghan was thus able to take his army across the Yellow River without a fight.

In the meantime, Zongwang's eastern army had also taken Daming (in Hebei Province) and crossed the river in its southward march. As the two Jin armies got closer to Dongjing, Emperor Qinzong of the Northern Song Dynasty was scared senseless. His ears assailed by his defeatist ministers' constant assertion that the only way out was to sue for peace, he finally gave in and sent his younger brother Zhao Gou, the Prince of Kang, to plead for

赵构经过磁州（今河北磁县），州官宗泽跟赵构说：“金朝要殿下去议和，这是骗人的把戏。他们已经兵临城下，求和又有什么用呢？”

磁州的百姓也拦住赵构的马，不让他到金营去求和。赵构害怕被金朝扣留，就在相州（今河南安阳）留了下来。

没有多久，两路金军已经赶到东京城下，猛烈攻城。城里只剩下三万禁卫军，也是七零八落，差不多逃亡了一大半。各路将领因为朝廷下过命令，也不来援救东京。这时候，宋钦宗再想召回李纲，已经来不及了。

宋钦宗急得束手无策。东京城里有个大骗子，名叫郭京，吹嘘会使“法术”，只要招集七千七百七十九个“神兵”，就可以活捉金将，打退金兵。一些朝廷大臣，居然把郭京当作救命稻草，让他找了一些地痞无赖，充当“神兵”。到金兵攻城的时候，郭京和他的“神兵”上去一交锋，就全垮下来。东京城被金兵攻破。

宋钦宗眼看末日来到，痛哭了一场，只好亲自带着几个大

peace with Zongwang.

When Zhao Gou passed through Cizhou (modern-day Ci County, Hebei Province), its governor Zong Ze said to him, "The Jin is playing a trick by inviting His Highness for peace talks. What's the sense of suing for peace when its troops are within striking distance of the capital?"

The inhabitants of Cizhou grabbed the reins of Zhao Gou's horse, refusing to let him go to the Jin camp. Zhao Gou was also afraid of being detained by the Jin Dynasty as a hostage, and decided to sytop in Xiangzhou (modern-day Anyang, Henan Province).

The two Jin armies soon arrived outside the city walls of Dongjing and launched a brutal attack. The city was now defended by a paltry force of about 30,000 troops of the Imperial Army, half of which had already deserted. Army commanders from other garrisons had been ordered away by imperial edict, and now stayed away. Emperor Qinzong wanted to call Li Gang back into service but it was already too late.

As Emperor Qinzong despaired, a charlatan in the capital called Guo Jing claimed to possess magic powers by which he could assemble 7,779 "divine soldiers" to capture the Jin generals alive and beat back the Jin attack. Some desperate ministers clutched at the life-saving straw that Guo Jing presented them, and told him to go ahead and put together a ragtag force of local hooligans as "divine soldiers". The brigade of "divine soldiers" led by Guo Jing crumbled as soon as it met the attacking Jin troops and Dongjing was taken.

Emperor Qinzong realized the day of reckoning had come. He had a good cry before being escorted by his ministers to the

臣手捧求降书，到金营去求和。宗翰勒令钦宗把河东、河北土地全部割让给金朝，并且向金朝献金一千万锭，银二千万锭，绢帛一千万匹。宋钦宗一一答应，金将才放他回城。

钦宗回到城里，向百姓大刮金银，送到金营。金将嫌他太慢，过不久，又把宋钦宗叫到金营，扣押起来，说要等交足金银后再放。宋钦宗派了二十四名官吏帮金兵在皇亲国戚、官吏、和尚道士等家里彻底查抄，前后抄了二十多天，除了搜去大量金银财宝之外，把珍贵的古玩文物、全国州府地图档案也一抢而空。

公元1127年四月，宗翰、宗望和他们率领的金军，俘虏了宋徽宗、钦宗两个皇帝和皇族、官吏二三千人，满载着搜刮来的财物，回北方去。从赵匡胤称帝开始的北宋王朝统治了一百六十七年，宣告灭亡。

Jin camp bearing an offer of surrender. Zonghan ordered Emperor Qinzong to cede all territory east and north of the Yellow River to the Jin Dynasty, and to pay tribute consisting of 10,000,000 ingots of gold, 20,000,000 ingots of silver and 10,000,000 bolts of silk and other fabric to the Jin court. Only when Emperor Qinzong agreed to all these demands did the Jin general allow him to go back to Dongjing.

Back in the city, Emperor Qinzong requisitioned large amounts of gold and silver from the inhabitants to be transported to the Jin camp. The Jin general, finding the process too slow for his pleasure, soon ordered Emperor Qinzong back into custody in the Jin camp to wait for the fulfillment of the quotas of gold and silver. Emperor Qinzong assigned twenty-four officials to help the Jin troops thoroughly search the homes of royal family members, noblemen, officials and Buddhist and Daoist monks. After twenty days of rummaging, large amounts of gold, silver and other treasures were taken, along with rare antiques and valuable cultural relics. The map archives of the country's regions and provinces were also ransacked.

In April 1127 AD, Zonghan, Zongwang and the Jin armies under their command, loaded with loot, returned north with Emperor Huizong, Emperor Qinzong and two to three thousand Song officials and nobility in custody. The Northern Song Dynasty founded by Zhao Kuangyin was thus extinguished after 167 years of reign.

17、宗泽三呼“过河”

北宋灭亡以后，原来留在相州的康王赵构逃到南京（今河南商丘）。公元1127年五月，赵构在南京即位，这就是宋高宗。这个偏安的宋王朝，后来定都临安（今浙江杭州），历史上称作南宋。

宋高宗即位以后，在舆论的压力下，不得不把李纲召回朝廷，担任宰相。但是实际上他信任的却是黄潜善和汪伯彦两个亲信。

李纲提出许多抗金的主张。他还跟宋高宗说：“要收复东京，非用宗泽不可”。

宗泽是一位坚决抗金的将领。北宋灭亡之前，宋钦宗曾经派他当和议使，到金京议和。宗泽跟人说：“我这次出使，不打算活着回来。如果金人肯退兵就好；要不然，我就跟他们争到底。宁肯丢脑袋，也不让国家蒙受耻辱。”宋钦宗一听宗泽口气那么硬，怕他妨碍和谈，就撤了他和议使的职务，派他到磁州去当地方官。

17. Zong Ze Thrice Cries, "Cross the River!"

Following the downfall of the Northern Song Dynasty, Zhao Gou, Prince of Kang, who had opted to stay in Xiangzhou, fled to Nanjing (modern-day Shangqiu, Henan Province). In May 1127 AD, Zhao Gou ascended the throne in Nanjing as Emperor Gaozong of the Song Dynasty. This rump regime of the Northern Song Dynasty later moved its capital to Lin'an (modern-day Hangzhou, Zhejiang Province), and is known to Chinese history as the Southern Song Dynasty.

After his accession to the throne, Emperor Gaozong of the Southern Song Dynasty was forced by public opinion to call Li Gang back to the central government to serve as Chief Minister, but his ears were monopolized by two trusted aides Huang Qianshan and Wang Boyan.

Li Gang had many ideas about resisting the Jin. He said to Emperor Gaozong, "To take back Dongjing, His Majesty needs the service of Zong Ze."

Zong Ze was a general committed to the resistance against the Jin. Before the Northern Song Dynasty had been toppled, Emperor Qinzong had appointed him as his envoy to negotiate a peace accord with the Jin Dynasty. Zong Ze said, "I am not counting on coming out of this mission alive. If the Jin agrees to withdraw its invading armies, then all's fine. If not, I will put my foot down and not yield an inch. I'd rather lose my head than bring humiliation and shame on my country."

了十三次胜仗，形势很好。他写信给当时的康王赵构，要求他召集各路将领，会师东京；又写信给三个将领，要他们联合行动，救援京城。哪知道那些将领不但不愿出兵，反嘲笑宗泽在说疯话。宗泽没办法，只好单独带兵作战。有一次，他率领的宋军遭到金军的包围，金军的兵力比宋军大十倍。宗泽对将士说：“今天进也是死，退也是死，我们一定要从死里杀出一条生路来。”将士们受到他的激励，以一当百，英勇作战，果然杀退了金军。

宋高宗早就了解宗泽的勇敢，这次听了李纲的推荐，就派宗泽为开封府知府。

这时候，金兵虽然已经撤出开封，但是开封城经过两次大战，城墙全部被破坏了。百姓和兵士混杂居住，再加上靠近黄河，金兵经常在北岸活动。开封城里人心惶惶，秩序很乱。

When Emperor Qinzong learned of Zong Ze's tough talk, he considered him a possible liability rather than an asset to the peace talks. He revoked his commission as a peace envoy and sent him to Cizhou as a local government administrator.

Then during the second Jin campaign against Dongjing, Zong Ze at the command of his forces scored thirteen consecutive victories against the Jin troops. To take advantage of this favorable situation, he wrote to Zhao Gou, who was then the Prince of Kang, urging him to summon commanders of various garrisons to converge on Dongjing. He also wrote to three generals asking them to come to the rescue of the capital in a coordinated action. These generals not only refused to commit their troops, but also derided Zong Ze's idea as hare-brained. Zong Ze had no choice but to continue the fight without any help. In one action, his troops were encircled by the Jin army, which was ten times larger than his was. Zong Ze said to his troops, "Today we die if we advance and we die if we retreat. So let's fight, and then maybe we have a chance to come out alive." Inspired and encouraged by their commander's determination, the troops fought with ten times their usual mettle and succeeded in beating back the Jin army.

Emperor Gaozong of the Southern Song Dynasty, who had long been aware of the valor of Zong Ze, accepted the recommendation of Li Gang and appointed him Governor of Kaifeng.

By that time, the Jin troops had pulled out of Kaifeng, but after the ravages of two major battles, all its city walls had been reduced to rubble. The military had to be barracked in civilian neighborhoods. The city's proximity to the Yellow River also meant that the activities of the Jin army on the north bank of the river had a demoralizing and destabilizing effect on the psyche

宗泽在军民中有很大的威望。他一到开封，先下了一道命令：“凡是抢劫居民财物的，一律按军法严办。”命令一下去，城里仍旧发生了几起抢劫案件。宗泽杀了几个抢劫犯，秩序就渐渐安定了下来。

河北人民忍受不了金兵的掠夺烧杀，纷纷组织义军，打击金军。李纲竭力主张依靠义军力量，组织新的抗金队伍。宗泽到了开封之后，积极联络义军。河北各地义军听到宗泽的威名，自愿接受他的指挥。

河东有个义军首领王善，聚集了七十万人马，想袭击开封。宗泽得知这个消息，单身骑马去见王善。他流着眼泪对王善说：“现在正是国家危急的时候，如果有像您这样的几个英雄，同心协力抗战，金人还敢侵犯我们吗？”

王善被他说得流下了感动的眼泪，说：“愿听宗公指挥。”

其他义军像杨进、王再兴、李贵、王大郎，都有人马几万到几十万。宗泽也派人去联络，说服他们团结一致，共同抗金。这样一来，开封城的外围防御巩固了，城里人心安定，存粮充足，物价稳定，恢复了大乱前的局面。

of the inhabitants of Kaifeng.

Zong Ze, who enjoyed great authority among both civilians and the military, immediately issued an order when he took up his post in Kaifeng. "Anyone robbing civilian homes will be severely dealt with according to military law." When robberies did occur after the order was issued, Zong Ze executed the perpetrators, and order was gradually re-established.

Fed up with the looting, burning and killing perpetrated by the Jin troops against them, inhabitants of Hebei organized uprisings to battle the Jin army. Li Gang was a strong advocate for organizing a new coalition against the Jin by relying on these insurgent forces as allies. When he arrived in Kaifeng, Zong Ze actively pursued alliances with the insurgencies. When the insurgents in various parts of Hebei heard of the heroic deeds of Zong Ze, they voluntarily submitted to his command.

An insurgent leader in Hedong by the name of Wang Shan made plans to attack Kaifeng with his 700,000 troops. When Zong Ze learned of his intentions, he rode alone to meet with Wang Shan. He said with tears in his eyes to Wang Shan, "Our country is now in mortal danger. If good men like you can get together in a united fight against the Jin, we will no longer have to worry about being invaded by its army again."

Moved to tears, Wang Shan said, "I am at your order."

Other movements of resistance led by Yang Jin, Wang Zaixing, Li Gui and Wang Dalang commanded troops whose strength varied from tens of thousands to hundreds of thousands. Zong Ze sent delegations to lobby all of them for an alliance against the Jin army. This ensured a strong peripheral defense around Kaifeng, reassuring its inhabitants. As a result, the granaries were

但是，就在宗泽准备北上恢复中原的时刻，宋高宗和黄潜善、汪伯彦却嫌南京不安全，准备继续南逃。李纲因反对南逃，被宋高宗撤了职。

宗泽十分焦急，亲自渡过黄河，约河北各路义军将领共同抗击金兵。他在开封周围，修筑二十四座堡垒，沿着黄河设立营寨，互相连接，密集得像鱼鳞一样，叫做“连珠寨”，加上河东、河北各地义军民兵互相呼应，宋军的防御力量，越来越强了。

宗泽一再上奏章，要求高宗回到开封，主持抗金。但是奏章到了黄潜善等手里，这批奸人竟取笑宗泽是个狂人，把他的奏章扣了下来。过了不久，宋高宗就从南京逃到扬州去了。

没有多久，金兵果然又分路大举进攻。金太宗派大将兀术（音 wū zhū，又叫宗弼）进攻开封，宗泽事先派部将分别驻守洛阳和郑州。兀术带兵接近开封的时候，宗泽派出几千精兵，绕到敌人后方，截断敌人退路，然后又和伏兵前后夹击，把兀术打得狼狈逃走。

replenished, and prices stabilized to pre-war levels.

However, as Zong Ze got ready to launch a northern expedition to recover the lost territory of the Central Plains, Emperor Gaozong and his trusted advisers Huang Qianshan and Wang Boyan planned to flee further south from Nanjing, which they considered too insecure. Because Li Gang was opposed to this retreat, Emperor Gaozong removed him from office.

Zong Ze, frustrated and anxious, crossed the Yellow River to lobby the leaders of the resistance movements in person for a united front against the Jin army. He commissioned the construction of twenty-four fortresses around Kaifeng, and a string of back-to-back military garrisons along the Yellow River, called "the Necklace of Stockades". The defensive capability of the Song army grew steadily with the support of the militias in various parts east and north of the Yellow River.

Zong Ze fired off memorial after memorial urging Emperor Gaozong to return to Kaifeng to lead the fight against the Jin army. However, these memorials invariably were intercepted by the treacherous Huang Qianshan and company, who derided Zong Ze as a lunatic. Soon Emperor Gaozong of Song fled from Nanjing to Yangzhou.

Shortly after, the Jin army, as predicted, launched another massive attack. Emperor Taizong of the Jin Dynasty made his general Wuzhu commander of the campaign against Kaifeng. When Wuzhu approached Kaifeng with his army, Zong Ze deployed a few thousand elite troops to outflank the enemy and cut off its route of retreat. Wuzhu's army was routed when it came under the simultaneous attack from the front and an ambush in the rear by elite Song troops.

又有一次，金将宗翰率领金兵攻占洛阳，宗泽派部将郭振民、李景良带兵袭击宗翰，打了败仗。郭振民向金军投降，李景良畏罪逃走。

宗泽派兵捉拿到李景良，责备他说：“打仗失败，本来可以原谅，现在你私自逃走，就是目中没有主将了。”说完，下令把李景良推出斩首。

郭振民向金军投降之后，宗翰派了一名金将跟郭振民一起到开封，劝宗泽投降。宗泽在开封府大堂接见他们，对郭振民说：“你如果在阵上战死，算得上一个忠义的鬼。现在你投降做了叛徒，居然还有什么脸来见我！”说着，喝令兵士把郭振民也斩了。

宗泽又回过头对劝降的金将冷笑一声，说：“我守住这座城，早准备跟你们拼命。你是金朝将领，没能耐在战场上打仗，却想用花言巧语来诱骗我！”

金将吓得面无人色，只听得宗泽吆喝一声，几个兵士上来，把金将也拉下去杀了。

宗泽一连杀了三人，表示了抗金的坚定决心，大大激励了宋军士气。他号令严明，指挥灵活，接连多次打败金兵，威名越

In another battle, the Jin general Zonghan led a force against Luoyang. The army sent by Zong Ze under the command of his lieutenants Guo Zhenmin and Li Jingliang was defeated by Zonghan. Guo Zhenmin surrendered to the Jin army, while Li Jingliang ran away to avoid punishment.

When Li Jingliang was caught and brought back by soldiers sent after him, Zong Ze took him to task, "Losing a battle can be forgiven. But your flight is insubordination." He ordered Li Jingliang beheaded.

Zonghan sent a Jin general, accompanied by Guo Zhenmin, who had surrendered to the Jin army, to Kaifeng to urge Zong Ze to submit. Zong Ze received them in the great hall of the governor's office. He said to Guo Zhenmin, "If you had died fighting, you would now be a patriotic martyr. But you chose surrender. How dare you show your face here?" He ordered his guards to behead Guo Zhenmin.

After the order was carried out, Zong Ze turned toward the Jin general with a disdainful laugh, "I have defended this city until now, and I've prepared myself for a fight to the death. You are a military man. You ought to be ashamed of yourself for trying to lure me with false promises because you don't have the ability to beat me on the battlefield."

The Jin general's face blanched with fear as Zong Ze barked an order. The Jin general was taken out by Zong Ze's guards and executed.

Zong Ze's execution of three men in a row attested to his determination to resist Jin aggression and greatly boosted the morale of the Song troops. By his strict discipline and nimble prosecution of the war, he scored numerous victories against the Jin army and as a result his fame spread. The Jin troops' fear of

来越大。金军将士对宗泽又害怕，又钦佩，提到宗泽，都把他称作宗爷爷。

宗泽依靠河北义军，聚兵积粮，认为完全有力量收复中原，接连写了二十几道奏章，请高宗回到开封。不用说，那些奏章都被黄潜善他们搁了起来。

这时候，宗泽已经是快七十岁的老人了，他受不了这个气，背上发毒疮病倒了。部下一些将领去问候他，宗泽病已经很重，他张开眼睛激动地说：“我因为国仇不能报，心里忧愤，才得了这个病。只要你们努力杀敌，我死了也没有遗憾了。”

将领们听了，个个感动得掉下了热泪。大伙离开的时候，只听得宗泽念着唐朝诗人杜甫的两句诗：“出师未捷身先死，长使英雄泪满襟！”接着，又用足力气，呼喊：“过河！过河！过河！”才阖上眼睛。

开封军民听到宗泽去世的消息，没有一个不伤心得痛哭流涕。

宗泽去世后，宋朝派杜充做东京留守。杜充是个昏庸残暴的人，一到开封，把宗泽的一切防守措施都废除了。没多久，中原地区又全都落在金军手里。

Zong Ze was mixed with admiration. They referred to him as "Grandpa Zong".

By relying on the resistance movements in Hebei, Zong Ze was able to increase his troop strength and replenish granaries. He was confident that he had the capability to take back the Central Plains. He fired off a succession of more than twenty memorials, urging Emperor Gaozong to return to Kaifeng. All those memorials were intercepted by Huang Qianshan and his ilk.

By this time Zong Ze was in his seventies. All the frustration and stress triggered a rash of festering sores on his back that finally brought him down. When his condition worsened, some of his lieutenants visited him. He opened his eyes and said to them in an emotional tone. "I've come down with these sores because I am frustrated by my inability to avenge my country. If I can be sure that you will continue to fight the enemy, I will be able to die without any regret."

These words brought tears into the generals' eyes. When they left, they could hear Zong Ze recite a line of verse by the famous Tang poet Du Fu. "The general dies before the battle is won, his breastplate covered with hero's tears!" Then mustering all the strength left in him, he shouted, "Cross the river! Cross the river! Cross the river!" before closing his eyes forever.

Zong Ze's death was deeply mourned by all the inhabitants and military men of Kaifeng.

After the death of Zong Ze, the Song government appointed Du Chong as defender of Dongjing. Du Chong was an incompetent and ruthless man. He undid all of Zong Ze's defensive deployments and works, and as a result the Jin army was soon able to retake all of the Central Plains.

18、韩世忠阻击金兵

金兵南下，一直赶到明州海边，一路上不断遭到百姓组织起来的义军的袭击。金将兀术想到长江沿岸还留着宋军的大批人马，不敢多留，带领金兵抢掠了一阵以后，向北方退兵。

公元1130年三月，兀术带了十五万金兵北撤，到了镇江附近，就遇到宋军大将韩世忠的拦击。韩世忠是主张抗金的将领，他对金兵的侵略暴行，十分气愤，决心趁金兵北撤的时候，狠狠阻击。

兀术到了江边，打听到韩世忠不放他们过江，就派个使者到宋营下了战书，要求跟宋军决战。韩世忠答应了他们，还跟兀术约定了决战的日期。那时候，金兵有十万人，但是韩世忠手下宋军总共才八千人，双方兵力相差很大。韩世忠明白，要打赢这个仗，只有依靠士气。他跟妻子梁红玉商量，梁红玉是个很有见识，又懂武艺的女将。她支持丈夫的计划，并且要求一起参加战斗。

18. Han Shizhong Blocks the Passage of the Jin Army

As the Jin army drove southward all the way to the seashores in Mingzhou, it ran into constant attacks by militias organized by resistance movements along the way. Remembering that large numbers of Song troops were still deployed along the Yangtze, the Jin general Wuzhu decided against tarrying for too long and pulled his troops back to the north after a fair amount of looting.

In March 1130 AD, Wuzhu arrived with his homebound troops near Zhenjiang, and was intercepted by the Song army under the command of General Han Shizhong. A strong advocate for resistance against Jin aggression, General Han Shizhong was angered by the atrocities of the invading Jin army, and was eager to deal a heavy blow to the Jin troops withdrawing to the north.

When Wuzhu's troops arrived at the river's edge, they were barred passage to the other bank by Han Shizhong. Wuzhu sent a messenger to the Song camp with a letter challenging them to a battle. Han Shizhong took the challenge and agreed with Wuzhu on the timing. The odds were heavily stacked against Han Shizhong, who was facing off against 100,000 Jin troops with his paltry 8,000. He was fully aware that the key to winning a battle with such a serious numerical disadvantage was troop morale. He discussed the matter with his wife Liang Hongyu, who was also a shrewd military officer well versed in the art of war. She subscribed to her husband's plan and volunteered for the battle.

韩世忠又召集部将商量，说：“这一带地势，要数金山（今镇江西北）上的龙王庙最险要，估计金人一定会到那儿去侦察。”他派出一名部将带领二百兵士到龙王庙设下埋伏。

果然不出韩世忠所料，过了一天，就有五名金军将士骑马上了金山，到龙王庙前察看宋军动静。庙里埋伏的宋兵等到金人靠近，擂响战鼓，冲杀出来。五名金军将士一见中了埋伏，拨转马头就逃。宋兵追上去，抓住了两名金兵，另外三名伏在马背上没命地逃奔，其中一个身穿红色战袍，系着玉腰带的金将，慌里慌张从马上摔了下来，又急忙跳上马背逃走。宋军审问了俘虏，才知道那个穿红袍的，就是金军主帅兀术。

决战的时刻来到了。双方在江边摆开阵势，展开了一场血战。韩世忠披挂上阵，他的夫人梁红玉身穿戎装，在江心的一艘战船上擂响战鼓，将士们见主帅夫人上阵助战，士气高涨，纷

Han Shizhong then called together his officers and said to them. "The most strategic spot in the surrounding terrain is the Dragon King Temple on Mount Jinshan (northwest of modern-day Zhenjiang). It is almost certain that the Jin army will send a scouting party to size up the area." He sent a lieutenant with 200 soldiers to prepare an ambush near the temple.

As predicted by Han Shizhong, a day later five Jin officers rode up Mount Jinshan on a reconnaissance mission to gather intelligence about Song deployments. When the Jin party approached, the Song ambushers in the temple charged out beating their war drums. The five Jin officers, realizing they had walked into a trap, quickly turned their horses around and galloped away. The pursuing Song troops captured two of the Jin officers, while the other three kept prodding their horses to run faster, their upper torsos leaning flat against the back of their mounts. A Jin general in a red battle tunic with a jade-studded belt around his waist fell off his horse during the desperate flight, but managed to jump back on and get away. After interrogating the captured Jin soldiers, the Song troops found out the general in the red tunic was none other than the Commander-in-Chief Wuzhu.

On the day of the decisive battle, the two opposing armies faced off each other by the river. A bloody battle followed. Han Shizhong donned his armor and rode into action while his wife Liang Hongyu, also in battle gear, beat war drums on a man-of-war on the river. Galvanized by the sight of the Commander-in-Chief's wife taking part in the war effort, the Song troops charged with redoubled valor into the enemy formation. The Jin army, while superior in numbers, was short on discipline. Further

纷纷冲杀过去。金兵虽然人马多，但是，一来军纪涣散，二来长途行军，十分疲劳，哪儿敌得过韩世忠手下精兵的袭击。一场战斗下来，金兵被杀伤的多得数不清，连兀术的女婿龙虎大王也被活捉。

兀术又派出使者到宋营，情愿把从江南抢来的财物全还给宋军，只求让他们渡江，韩世忠不答应，兀术又提出把他带来的一匹名马献给韩世忠，也被拒绝。

兀术没法过江，只好带着金兵乘船退到黄天荡（今江苏南京市东北）。哪里知道黄天荡是一条死港，船驶进那里，找不到出路。正在进退两难的时候，有人献计说：“这里原来有一条河道，可以直达建康，只是现在堵塞不通，如果叫兵士开凿出来，就可以透过宋军的追击了。”

兀术立刻命令金兵开挖河道。金兵人多，挖了一个通宵，就开凿了一条五十里长的水道。兀术赶忙指挥金兵沿水道逃到建康，不料半路上又遇到宋将岳飞的堵击，只好退回到黄天荡。

金兵在黄天荡被宋军围困了四十八天，将士们叫苦连天。这时候，江北的金军也派兵来接应，兀术想用小船渡江，韩世忠

weakened by the fatigue of long marches, it could not withstand the strong offensive of the elite force under Han Shizhong's command. The Jin army suffered heavy casualties, and Wuzhu's son-in-law, Prince Longhu (Dragon and Tiger) was captured.

Wuzhu sent another messenger to the Song camp with the proposal to return all the loot they had taken from Jiangnan to the Song army as long as they were allowed to cross the river. The proposal was rejected by Han Shizhong. Wuzhu offered a treasured purebred horse to Han Shizhong, but it was rejected too.

Unable to cross the river, Wuzhu transported his troops by boat back to Huangtiandang (northwest of modern-day Nanjing, Jiangsu Province). It turned out Huangtiandang was a dead-end port with no outlet. When the convoy was stuck in this awkward situation, someone made a suggestion, "There used to be a canal here that led directly to Jiankang. It is now made impassible by silt. If the soldiers could dredge the canal, we will be able to shake off the pursuing Song army."

Wuzhu immediately ordered his troops to start dredging. With plenty of labor, the Jin army working through the night was able to open up some twenty miles of the canal for navigation. Wuzhu led his troops in a dash for Jiankang on the newly dredged canal, but they were driven back to Huangtiandang by the troops of the Song general Yue Fei before they could reach their destination.

The Jin army was encircled by the Song troops in Huangtiandang for forty-eight miserable days. In the meantime, the Jin troops stationed north of the river had sent reinforcements to relieve the siege. Wuzhu planned to cross the river by using smaller boats, but Han Shizhong was prepared. He loaded his ships with plenty of grappling hooks attached to iron chains.

早有准备，他在大船上备好大批带着铁索的挠钩，等金兵的船只渡江的时候，大船上的宋兵用长钩把小船钩住，再用铁索用力一拉。小船翻了，金兵连人带船一起沉入江心里。

兀术十分焦急，请求韩世忠上阵对话，苦苦要求韩世忠让他们渡江。韩世忠说：“你们要过江不难，只要你们归还占领的地方，我就放你过江。”

兀术回到金营，跟金将商量对付宋军的办法，他愁眉苦脸地说：“宋军行船好像我们骑马，来去像飞一样快，我们怎么渡得了江？”

部下有人说：“现在形势紧急，只要悬赏叫人献计，也许还有希望。”

兀术下命令挂出悬赏牌，果然有一个奸细跑来献计说：“宋军的大海船，是靠风帆行驶的，只要挑个没风的日子出江，大船就驶不动了。”他还教兀术用火攻的办法攻击宋军。

When the Jin troops started crossing the river in the smaller craft, the Song soldiers on the big ships would throw out the chains to hook the small boats and then with a forceful tug capsize the small boats, sending the Jin troops together with the boats to the bottom of the river.

Overwhelmed by anxiety, Wuzhu asked Han Shizhong for a dialogue on the battlefield, imploring him to allow the crossing. Han Shizhong said, "That's not a problem, provided you return all the territory you've taken from us."

Wuzhu returned to camp to consult his officers on ways to deal with the Song army. He said with dejection, "The Song troops are as good with their boats as we are with our horses. How can we hope to cross the river when their ships sail at such great speed?"

Someone said, "In a crisis like this, we should probably try to offer a reward for good ideas. That may help to find a way out."

When the reward was posted, a Song traitor came forward with the advice, "The sea going ships of the Song army are wind-propelled. If you pick a windless day to cross the river, the big ships will be helpless in trying to stop you." He also suggested the use of fire attacks against the Song army.

过了几天，正遇到个大晴天，江面上风平浪静，金兵偷偷登上小船，分批渡江。韩世忠想用大船赶上去拦截，但是因为没风，大船行驶慢，赶不上小船。正在着急的时候，金兵的火箭纷纷射来，射中了宋船的风帆。风帆起了火，整个船只都延烧起来，船上的宋军纷纷落水。韩世忠只好放弃船只，乘小船退回镇江。

兀术摆脱韩世忠的阻击，带兵回到建康，抢掠了一阵，准备撤回北方，到了静安镇（今江苏江宁西北），又遭到了岳家军的袭击，被杀得一败涂地，狼狈逃窜。岳飞赶走金兵，收复了建康。

A few days later the wind died down on the river and the sun was out. The Jin troops sneaked into small boats to cross the river in batches. When Han Shizhong attempted to stop them with his big ships, these proved too slow without the aid of the wind to catch up with the smaller, nimbler boats. The situation was made worse by the flaming arrows shot by the Jin soldiers. The sails on the Song ships caught fire and the ships were engulfed in flames, forcing the sailors to jump into the river. Han Shizhong had to abandon the burning ships and withdraw to Zhenjiang in smaller craft.

Wuzhu finally broke through the blockade of Han Shizhong and brought his troops back to Jiankang. After another round of looting, he got ready to return to the north. When his army reached Jing'an (northwest of modern-day Jiangning, Jiangsu Province), it was attacked and routed by the army commanded by Yue Fei. The Jin troops fled in disarray. Yue Fei drove away the Jin troops and recovered Jiankang.

19、岳家军大破兀术

收复建康的岳飞，是南宋抗金的名将，我国历史上著名的民族英雄。

岳飞是相州汤阴（今河南汤阴）人，出生那年，黄河决口，家乡闹了一场水灾，家里生活很困苦。岳飞从刻苦读书，尤其爱读兵法。他力气大，十几岁的时候就能拉三百斤的大弓。后来，他听说同乡老人周同武艺高强，岳飞就拜周同做老师，学得一手好箭，能左右开弓，百发百中。

后来，岳飞从了军。金兵南下的时候，他在东京当小军官。有一次，他带了一百名骑兵，在黄河边练兵。忽然对面来了大股金兵，兵士们都吓呆了，岳飞却不慌不忙地说：“敌人虽然多，但他们不知道我们的兵力多少。我们可以趁他们没准备的时候击败他们。”说着，就带头冲向敌阵，斩了金军一名将领。兵士们受到岳飞的鼓励，也冲上去，果然把金军杀得七零八落。

这一来，岳飞的勇敢出了名。过了几年，他在宗泽部下当将领。宗泽很器重他，对他说：“像你这样智勇双全，即使古代

19. Yue Fei Routs Wuzhu's Army

Yue Fei, who had recovered Jiankang, is considered a national hero in Chinese history. He was born to a poor family in Tangyin, Xiangzhou (in Henan Province) in the year the Yellow River breached its banks, flooding his hometown. He was an avid reader since a child, with a special love for books about the art of war. Endowed with great physical strength, in his teens he was able to wield a huge bow weighing three hundred *jin*. Later he studied under Zhou Tong, who was a venerable man famed for his excellent martial skills. Soon Yue Fei became an expert archer with deadly precision in shooting at moving targets.

He later joined the military. At the time the Jin army invaded the south, he was a low-ranking officer in Dongjing. One day, when he was training a hundred cavalrymen by the Yellow River, a large contingent of Jin troops surged into view. Yue Fei said calmly to his evidently scared soldiers, "The enemy may outnumber us, but they have no idea how many we are. We can defeat them before they realize our disadvantage." That said, he led the charge into the enemy formation and killed a Jin general. His soldiers, inspired by Yue Fei's example, followed him into battle and decimated the Jin contingent.

The incident cemented Yue Fei's fame as a courageous leader. A few years later, he served as a commander under Zong Ze. Zong Ze greatly valued his service and told him, "Your physical courage

名将也不过如此。但是光靠冲锋陷阵，毕竟不是常胜的办法。”他交给岳飞一份古代的阵图，说：“你拿这个去好好研究一下。”

岳飞接过阵图，向宗泽道谢了，接着说：“按照阵图作战，这是兵法的常规。至于灵活运用，随机应变，还得靠当将领的善于用心。”

宗泽听了，连连点头，赞赏这个青年将领的见解。

岳飞跟宗泽一样，把抗金作为自己的职责。宋高宗即位以后，他就马上写了一份奏章，希望高宗能亲自率领宋军北伐，激励士气，恢复中原。他还批评了黄潜善、汪伯彦一伙投降派的主张。

奏章一上去，宋高宗不但不听，反而嫌岳飞小小将官，多管闲事，革了他的军职。

宗泽死后，岳飞归东京留守杜充指挥。金军大举进攻，杜充逃到建康，金将兀术攻打建康，杜充又可耻地向金军投降。杜充手下的将士都散了伙，只有岳飞的队伍仍旧坚持在建康附近

and insight are comparable to the best qualities of famous generals in history. But to ensure military success in the long run, courage in battle is not enough." He handed to Yue Fei a diagram of military formations passed down from ancient times: "Study this carefully."

Thanking Zong Ze, Yue Fei said, "It is military convention to follow these diagrams of battle formations in battle. But a commander still needs to use his judgment in adapting them to changing conditions on the battlefield."

Zong Ze nodded his approval, finding the young general's perception admirable.

Like Zong Ze, Yue Fei considered the fight against the Jin Dynasty his mission in life. When Emperor Gaozong of the Southern Song Dynasty ascended the throne, Yue Fei immediately submitted a memorial urging the Emperor to lead a northern expedition in order to boost troop morale and recover the lost territory of the Central Plains. He also denounced the defeatist views of Huang Qianshan and Wang Boyan.

Emperor Gaozong disregarded the memorial and, finding it objectionable that a general relatively low in the pecking order did not know better than to mind his own business, stripped Yue Fei of his military commission.

After Zong Ze's death, Yue Fei served under Du Chong, the designated defender of Dongjing. In the face of a massive Jin offensive, Du Chong fled to Jiankang. Then when General Wuzhu attacked Jiankang, the shameless Du Chong surrendered. As troops led by other commanders under Du Chong disbanded, Yue Fei continued to engage the enemy with his army in the Jiankang area. As Wuzhu withdrew his army

战斗。这回趁兀术北撤的时候，他跟韩世忠配合，把兀术打得大败。

金兵北撤以后，宋高宗从温州回到临安。金朝在中原地区立了一个傀儡皇帝刘豫，国号大齐，充当金朝的帮凶，骚扰南宋地界。岳飞率领将士多次打退了金齐联军，建立战功。到他三十二岁的时候，已经从一个普通将领提升到节度使的地位，跟当时的名将韩世忠、刘光世、张俊并驾齐驱了。

就在这个时期，他写了一首传诵千古的词《满江红》，抒发了他抗金的壮志豪情。词的上半首是：

怒发冲冠，凭栏处，潇潇雨歇。
抬望眼，仰天长啸，壮怀激烈。
三十功名尘与土，八千里路云和月。
莫等闲白了少年头，空悲切。

岳飞一心恢复中原，他对自己要求十分严格。宋高宗曾经

northward. Yue Fei had an opportunity, with the support of Han Shizhong, to rout the enemy force.

With the Jin army pulled back to the north, Emperor Gaozong returned to Lin'an from Wenzhou. In the meantime, the Jin Dynasty had groomed a certain Liu Yu as a puppet emperor of the so-called Great Qi Dynasty to be an accomplice of the Jin in its incursions into Song territory. Yue Fei led his army to many victories in beating back invasions by the Jin-Qi coalition force. At the age of 32, he was elevated to regional military commissioner, his status equalling that of renowned generals of the time, such as Han Shizhong, Liu Guangshi and Zhang Jun.

It was in that period that he composed the famous poem, popular until this day, entitled *To the Tune of Man Jiang Hong (A River of Red)*, which gave expression to his patriotic fervor and determination to defeat Jin aggression. The poem starts with,

My hair bristles with anger
As I look out by the rail
At a world freshened by recent rain
Raising my eyes, I roar at the sky
The passion that agitates my breast
After a career spanning thirty years
Of success and fame now turned to dust and
Eight thousand li on the road gone with the wind
Wait not until your young head turns all white
Leaving a lifetime of useless regret

In his unwavering passion for the recovery of lost territory in the Central Plains, Yue Fei set high ethical standards for himself.

为他造一座住宅，岳飞推辞了，他说：“敌人还没消灭，哪里顾得上家呢？”有人问他说天下什么时候能够太平，岳飞回答说：“文官不贪财，武将不怕死，天下才有太平的希望。”

岳飞平时十分注意练兵。部队休整的时候，他也带将士穿着铁甲冲山坡，跳壕沟，要求像打仗时一样严格。有一次，他儿子岳云在骑马冲山坡的时候，因为战马失足，摔倒在地。岳飞知道了，狠狠责打了岳云。别的兵士看到主将对自己的儿子也这样严格，就格外认真操练了。

在岳家军里，军纪特别严。一次，有个兵士擅自用百姓一束麻来缚柴草，被岳飞发现，立刻按军法严办。岳家军行军经过村子，夜里都露宿在路旁。老百姓请他们进屋，没有人肯进去。岳家军有一个口号，叫做：“冻死不拆屋，饿死不掳掠。”

岳飞对待将士要求十分严格，又关心爱护。兵士生病，他常常亲自替他们调药，部下将领出征的时候，他就叫妻子岳夫人慰问他们的家属，将士在战争中阵亡，就抚育他们的子女，上

Emperor Gaozong built a house for him but Yue Fei declined the gift, saying, "As long as the enemy has not been defeated, I will have no time for a home." Asked when peace and stability would come, Yue Fei replied, "When civil officials are no longer venal and when military officers are unafraid to die, peace will have a chance to break out."

Yue Fei was a stickler for rigorous military training in peacetime. When his troops were recuperating, he would still put them through training as if in wartime by taking the lead in running up hills in armor and hopping over trenches. In a training exercise, his son Yue Yun fell off his horse when it tripped as they rushed up a hill. Yue Fei severely punished Yue Yun for the incident. When other soldiers saw the Commander-in-Chief apply the same rigorous discipline to his son, they trained even more conscientiously.

Discipline was strict in General Yue's Army. When he discovered that a soldier had used some civilian's rope to bind kindling wood, he dealt with that soldier severely. His troops slept along the road in open air when they stopped for the night at a village. Even when village inhabitants invited them to go inside their houses, no soldier would do so. A slogan of General Yue's Army was, "I'd rather freeze to death than take down a house for kindling wood. I'd rather starve to death than loot."

Yue Fei's strict discipline was accompanied by caring. When soldiers fell ill, he often personally prepared their medicine. When his lieutenants departed for battle, he would ask his wife to comfort their families. When troops died in battle, he would make sure their children received proper care. All material and monetary rewards he received from the government would be distributed

级赏给他的财物，一概分配给将士，自己家里丝毫不留。

经过这样的训练和照顾，岳家军将士士气旺盛，作战勇猛。岳飞在作战之前，总是先召集将领，一起商量作战方案，然后才出战。所以打起仗来，每战必胜，从没有打过败仗。金军将士见到岳家军，没有一个不害怕，他们中间流传着一句话：“撼山易，撼岳家军难。”

南宋有岳飞、韩世忠等一批名将，再加上各地百姓组织的义军的配合，要打退金兵本来是有条件的。但是宋高宗不顾岳飞等人反对，一味向金朝屈辱求和，公元1139年，竟向金朝称臣，每年进贡银二十五万两，绢二十五万匹，金朝把陕西、河南一带土地“偿还”南宋。

公元1140年十月，金朝又撕毁和约，发动全国精锐部队，以兀术为统帅，分四路大举进攻。不到一个月，根据和议还给南宋的土地，全被金军夺去。南宋王朝面临覆灭的危险。宋高宗这才不得不下诏书，要各路宋军抵抗。

to his troops. None was kept for himself or his family.

Because of the rigorous training and Yue Fei's caring attitude, his army was always highly motivated and valorous in battle. Before every military action, Yue Fei would call his commanders together to discuss the battle plans. This ensured that his army never lost a battle. General Yue's Army inspired terror among Jin commanders and soldiers, who reached the conclusion that, "It is easier to move a mountain than to win a battle against General Yue's Army."

With military commanders of the caliber of Yue Fei, Han Shizhong and many others, and the support of the militias of the resistance movements across the country, the Southern Song Dynasty had the possibility of repelling the invading Jin army. Nevertheless, Emperor Gaozong was bent on seeking peace with the Jin even on humiliating terms, despite opposition by Yue Fei and others. In 1139 AD, he agreed to submit to the Jin Dynasty. The Southern Song Dynasty was to pay them an annual tribute of 250,000 taels of silver and 250,000 bolts of silk. In return, the Jin Dynasty agreed to reward the Southern Song Dynasty with territory in Shaanxi and Henan, territory which the Jin Dynasty had taken from the Southern Song Dynasty to begin with.

In October 1140 AD, the Jin Dynasty tore up the accord and launched a massive campaign. Its best troops under the command of Wuzhu attacked the Southern Song Dynasty on four fronts. Within barely a month, the Jin army retook all the territory returned to the Southern Song Dynasty pursuant to the peace accord. With the Southern Song Dynasty facing imminent collapse, Emperor Gaozong finally saw no alternative but to issue an edict calling on all Song troops to fight back.

岳飞得到这个命令，立刻一面派部将王贵、牛皋、杨再兴等分路出兵，一面派人到河北跟义军首领梁兴联络，要他率领义军在河东、河北包抄敌人后方。岳飞坐镇在郾城指挥。

过了几天，几路人马纷纷告捷，先后收复了颍昌（今河南许昌东）、陈州（今河南淮阳）和郑州。金军统帅兀术在东京听到岳飞进兵，大为恐慌，连忙召集部下将领一起商量对策。大家议论纷纷，说宋朝别的将帅还容易对付，就是岳家军攻势难挡。但是既然来了，只好集中全力，跟岳家军拼一下。接着兀术就和龙虎大王、盖天大王带大军进攻郾城。

兀术大军来到郾城，宋金双方都摆开战场。岳飞先派他儿子岳云领着一支精锐骑兵打先锋，他对岳云说：“这次出战，只能打胜仗，如果不能打胜，回来就先砍你的头！”

岳云答应了一声，就带头冲上阵去，奋勇拼杀。宋军随着岳云，杀得金兵丢下了遍野的尸首。

After receiving the order to fight, Yue Fei immediately ordered his lieutenants Wang Gui, Niu Gao and Yang Zaixing to lead their troops into action. In the meantime, he sent a delegation to Hebei to get in touch with Liang Xing, the leader of a resistance movement, asking him to move his militias to the rear of the enemy army east and north of the river. Yue Fei directed the war effort from Yancheng.

A few days later, troops under his command won victories on various fronts, regaining control of Yingchang (east of modern-day Xuchang, Henan Province), Chenzhou (modern-day Huaiyang, Henan Province) and Zhengzhou in separate battles. When the supreme commander of the Jin invasion force Wuzhu learned in Dongjing of the action of Yue Fei, he was dismayed and immediately called his commanders together to agree on a response. The consensus of the meeting was that it would be easy to deal with other generals of the Southern Song Dynasty, but General Yue's Army was a formidable foe. However, since they had come this far, there was no alternative but to concentrate all they had on a battle with General Yue's Army. Soon Wuzhu, King Jiong and King Gaitian led their troops on a massive attack against Yancheng.

When Wuzhu's army arrived near Yancheng, the two sides formed battle arrays. Yue Fei sent his son Yue Yun with an elite cavalry brigade to spearhead the action. He said to Yue Yun, "You must win this battle. Otherwise I will have your head chopped off when you return."

Yue Yun gave a quick acknowledgment, and bravely led the charge into enemy lines. The rest of the Song troops, who inflicted heavy casualties on the Jin army, followed Yue Yun's vanguard.

兀术败了一阵，就调用他的“铁浮图”进攻。“铁浮图”是经过兀术专门训练的一支骑兵，这支人马都披上厚厚的铁甲，以三个骑兵编成一队，居中冲锋，又用两支骑兵从左右两翼包抄，叫做“拐子马”。

岳飞看准了拐子马的弱点，命令将士上阵的时候，带着刀斧。等敌人冲来，弯着身子，专砍马脚。马砍倒了，金兵跌下马来，岳飞就命令兵士出击，把铁浮图、拐子马打得落花流水。兀术听到这消息，哭得挺伤心，说：“自从起兵以来，全靠拐子马打胜仗，这下全完了。”但他不肯认输，过了几天，又亲自率领十二万大军进攻宋军。岳飞部将杨再兴带领三百名骑兵在前哨巡视，见到金兵，立即投入战斗，杀伤敌人两千多人。杨再兴也中箭牺牲。宋将张宪从后面赶上，杀散金兵，兀术才不得不逃走。

兀术在郾城失败，又改攻颍昌。岳飞早料到这一着，派岳云带兵援救颍昌。岳云带领八百骑兵往来冲杀，金兵竟没人能抵挡。后来宋军步兵和义军分左右两翼包围，金兵又打了个大败仗。

After losing one round, Wuzhu resorted to his specially trained cavalry units called "Iron Towers", each of which consisted of three heavily armored horsemen linked together. These were concentrated in the center. Two cavalry detachments using the *guai zi ma* device (several horses tied together) attacked the flanks.

Yue Fei soon discovered the weakness of the *guai zi ma*, and ordered his troops to go into battle carrying axes. When the Jin *guai zi ma* troops came at them, they would stoop low and hack at the horses' hoofs. The stumble of one horse would drag down the other horses with it, sending the riders to the ground. Yue Fei's troops would then set on the fallen Jin soldiers. The Iron Towers and *guai zi ma* devices failed miserably.

Wuzhu cried disconsolately at the news, saying, "I've always won my battles on the strength of the *guai zi ma*. Now all is lost." However, he refused to concede defeat. A few days later he led one 120,000 troops against the Song army. When Yue Fei's lieutenant Yang Zaixing inspected the frontline at the head of 300 cavalrymen, he saw the advancing Jin army and immediately engaged it, killing 2,000 enemy soldiers. He was shot dead by an arrow. Another Song general, Zhang Xian, joined the fray and succeeded in dispersing the Jin troops and sending Wuzhu fleeing.

After his defeat at Yancheng, Wuzhu made Yingchang the target of his next attack. Yue Fei had foreseen this development and sent Yue Yun with troops to relieve Yingchang. The Jin army proved no match for the 800 bravely charging cavalrymen under Yue Yun's command. With Song infantry and militias attacking its flanks, the Jin army was again routed.

The militias in the Taihang Mountains led by Liang Xing and other militias along the Yellow River were also joining the fight.

这时候，由梁兴率领的太行山义军和黄河两岸的各路义军，也纷纷响应。他们打起岳家军的旗帜，到处打击金军，截断金军的运粮线。金兵看了吓得心惊胆战。

岳家军节节胜利，一直打到距离东京只有四十五里的朱仙镇。

河北的义军听到岳家军打到朱仙镇，都欢欣鼓舞，渡过黄河来同岳家军会合。老百姓用牛车拉着粮食慰劳岳家军，有的还顶着香盆来欢迎，个个兴奋得直流眼泪。

岳飞眼看这个胜利的形势，也止不住心里的兴奋。他鼓励部下说：“大家努力杀敌吧。等我们直捣黄龙府的时候，再跟各路弟兄痛痛快快地喝酒庆祝胜利吧！”

They fought the Jin troops under the banner of General Yue's Army, cutting off the Jin army's supply routes. They generally gave the Jin troops a hard time.

Propelled by an unbroken winning streak, General Yue's Army marched to the town of Zhuxian, within some twenty kilometers of Dongjing.

The militias in Hebei were elated by the news that General Yue's Army had reached Zhuxian. They crossed the Yellow River to join forces with it. Local inhabitants brought food on ox carts. General Yue's troops, greeting the soldiers with incense burners. Tears of excitement filled their eyes.

Buoyed by the victories and unable to contain his joy, Yue Fei cheered his troops on. "Let's keep up the good fight! When we enter Huanglong of the Jin Dynasty, we will drink a big toast to our victory."

20、卖国贼秦桧

岳飞在朱仙镇大捷，逼近东京。兀术眼看在东京呆不下去，决定渡过黄河北撤。当他带着金兵离开东京的时候，有个书生拦住他的马，说：“大王（指兀术）别走了。岳少保（‘少保’是岳飞的官衔）马上会撤兵。东京一定没事儿。”

兀术很奇怪，问那个书生说：“岳飞用五百骑兵打败我们十万大军，百姓日夜盼他们打过来，东京还能守得住？”

那个书生说：“朝廷里有权臣，大将要在外面立功，是不可能的。依我看，岳少保自己性命难保，哪儿还谈得上立功？”

兀术听了，恍然大悟，马上拨转马头，带兵回到东京。

那个书生说的那个“权臣”，就是南宋朝廷的宰相秦桧（音 hui）。

秦桧本来是北宋时期的大臣。当宋徽宗、钦宗两个皇帝被金兵俘虏到北方去的时候，秦桧和他的妻子王氏也跟随他们一

20. The Traitor, Qin Hui

Following a major victory at Zhuxian, Yue Fei's army now approached Dongjing. Realizing he could no longer hold Dongjing, Wuzhu decided to cross the Yellow River, withdrawing his army to the north. When he was on the point of leaving Dongjing with his troops, a young scholar stopped his mount and said, "My prince! You don't need to leave. Shaobao Yue will withdraw his troops soon. I can assure you Dongjing is safe." ("Shaobao" was Yue Fei's official title: It meant "Junior Guardian".)

Wuzhu asked in disbelief, "Yue Fei was able to defeat my 100,000 with his 500 cavalrymen, and the inhabitants here pray for his attack against the city. How can Dongjing be safe?"

The young scholar said, "When there are power-hungry, scheming ministers in the central government, the generals will be prevented from claiming credit on the battlefield. In my view Shaobao Yue won't even be able to save his own neck, much less be given a chance to show his mettle and claim credit."

Struck by the cogency of the analysis, Wuzhu immediately turned his horse around and led his troops back to Dongjing.

One of the scheming ministers that young scholar had in mind was Chief Minister Qin Hui of the Southern Song Dynasty. Qin Hui had been a minister in the Northern Song period. When Emperor Huizong and Emperor Qinzong were taken to the north as prisoners by the Jin army, Qin Hui and his wife followed them in captivity to the capital of the Jin Dynasty. Qin Hui groveled before Emperor Taizong of the Jin Dynasty and succeeded in

起被俘到金京。秦桧在金太宗面前，低声下气，百依百顺。金太宗认为他很有才干，就把他派到大将挾懶部下当军事参谋。

这时候，金朝发现南宋抗金力量越来越强大，又有岳飞、韩世忠等大将坚决主张抗战，不好对付，就决定把秦桧放回南方充当内奸。公元1130年，挾懶攻打楚州（今江苏淮安）的时候，把秦桧和他的妻子放回南宋。

秦桧来到越州宋高宗的行宫求见，天花乱坠地编造了一通谎话，说他在楚州怎样杀死敌人的看守，怎样夺了一条船逃出来。当时就有不少大臣怀疑，楚州到这儿路远迢迢，秦桧越过金兵防线逃回来，难道金兵没有追捕？再说，即使敌人防备不严，让他偷偷跑了，一定十分匆忙，又怎能带着王氏一起走？

但是，当时的宰相范宗尹跟秦桧是老朋友，竭力在高宗面前帮秦桧说话，并且说秦桧是个既可靠又能干的人才。宋高宗本来日思夜想要跟金朝讲和，听说秦桧从金朝回来，熟悉金朝内情，立刻召见秦桧。

秦桧第一次朝见高宗，就劝高宗跟金人讲和，还送上了代朝廷起草的一份求和信。

impressing him with his ability to serve. He got himself appointed to a position in the military staff of the Jin General Talan.

At that time, the Jin Dynasty witnessed with alarm the steady growth of anti-Jin forces in the Southern Song Dynasty. Staunchly hawkish generals such as Yue Fei and Han Shizhong posed a particular challenge. It was decided that Qin Hui would be sent back to the south as a mole in the Song government. In 1130 AD, Qin Hui and his wife were slipped back into Southern Song territory when the Jin General Talan attacked Chuzhou (modern-day Huaian, Jiangsu Province).

Qin Hui went to the traveling imperial palace of Emperor Gaozong in Yuezhou for an audience, during which he gave a vivid, though fictional, account of how he had killed enemy guards in Chuzhou and escaped on a boat he commandeered. Many ministers were very skeptical about the veracity of the account. Chuzhou was a long way from there; why was Qin Hui not intercepted by the Jin army as he escaped through Jin-controlled territory? Besides, even if he could have sneaked through lax enemy defenses, the escape must have been a hurried affair. How could he have had the leisure to bring his wife along?

However, Chief Minister Fan Zongyan, an old friend of Qin Hui's, vouched for him in front of Emperor Gaozong, praising Qin Hui's reliability and competence. Emperor Gaozong, who had been obsessed with the idea of reconciliation with the Jin Dynasty, immediately sent for Qin Hui, in the belief that this man fresh from the Jin court must have an insider's insights into Jin affairs.

In their first meeting, Qin Hui immediately spoke to Emperor Gaozong of peace and reconciliation with the Jin Dynasty. He had even come prepared with a peace offer he had drafted in the

宋高宗接见秦桧之后，觉得秦桧的主张很合他口味。他对大臣们说：“秦桧比谁都忠。有了他，我高兴得晚上也睡不着觉呢。”他立刻任命秦桧做礼部尚书，过了三个月，又提升他当副宰相；再过半年，秦桧就成为宰相兼枢密使，掌握了南宋军政大权。

秦桧当了宰相之后，就干起卖国求和的勾当来。因为遭到许多朝臣的激烈反对，曾经被罢免了宰相职位。但是平庸的宋高宗还是把秦桧当做心腹看待，过了几年，又重新任命秦桧为宰相。秦桧利用他的权力和地位，勾结金朝，千方百计破坏抗金将领的活动。听到岳飞连战连胜，准备直捣黄龙府，秦桧大起恐慌。因为金朝是他的后台，金朝一败，他在南宋也就站不住脚。于是，他就唆使宋高宗发出命令，要岳飞从前线撤兵。

岳飞突然接到宋高宗的撤兵命令，弄得莫名其妙。他派人送奏章给高宗说：金兵已经丧尽士气，我军士气高涨，胜利就

name of the Song government.

After meeting with Qin Hui, Emperor Gaozong found his views quite palatable. He said to his ministers, "Qin Hui's loyalty is unimpeachable. I was so excited about having him in the government that I couldn't sleep last night." Emperor Gaozong immediately made him Imperial Secretary of the Ministry of Rites. Three months later, he was promoted to Deputy Chief Minister. In another six months, Qin Hui became Chief Minister, concurrently holding the title of Military Affairs Commissioner, which gave him control over all civil and military matters.

Once in the post of Chief Minister, Qin Hui began working for reconciliation with the Jin Dynasty, intending to sell out his country's interests. Eventually, he was demoted from the post of Chief Minister because of the intense opposition of many ministers to his approach. However, the fatuous Emperor Gaozong never ceased to take Qin Hui into his confidence, and reappointed him Chief Minister a few years later. Abusing his power and position, Qin Hui made common cause with the Jin Dynasty and did his best to undercut the generals committed to the anti-Jin cause. He was greatly alarmed by the successive victories achieved by Yue Fei against the Jin army, and the prospect of his imminent drive into the Jin capital. He feared that once the Jin, his "backstage boss", collapsed, his position would become untenable in the Southern Song Dynasty. Under his prodding, Emperor Gaozong ordered Yue Fei to withdraw his forces from the front.

Yue Fei found the order incomprehensible. In a memorial to Emperor Gaozong, he said, "The Jin army is demoralized, and our highly motivated troops are on the cusp of winning the war. We must not let slip this opportunity." He asked the

在眼前，时机不能错过。他请求高宗取消撤兵命令，允许他继续进军。

秦桧接到岳飞奏章，又想了一个恶毒的手段，先命令张俊、刘光世等大将的人马从淮北前线撤兵，然后对高宗说，岳飞的军队在中原已经成为孤军，不能再留，叫宋高宗发出紧急金牌，叫岳飞撤军。

岳飞在前线等待高宗的进军诏令，没想到接到的却是朝廷催促退兵的紧急金牌。岳飞接到第一道金牌，正在犹豫，送金牌的快马又到了，从早到晚，快马一个接一个，一连接到十二道金牌。岳飞知道要改变高宗的决定已经没有希望，气愤得泪流满面，说：“想不到我十年来的努力，一下子全给毁了。”（原文是“十年之功，废于一旦。”）

岳飞要从朱仙镇退兵的消息一传出去，附近的百姓十分震惊，纷纷聚集在街头。他们拦住岳飞的马，哭泣着说：“我们顶着香盆，运着粮草，迎接官军，这是金人都知道的事。现在相公要回去，我们只有死路一条了。”

岳飞看到这个情景，也禁不住流下眼泪。他叫左右兵士拿出高宗的诏书来给大家看，说：“朝廷下了紧急金牌，我不能擅自作主留在这里啊！”

Emperor to rescind the withdrawal order and allow him to continue the campaign.

After reading the memorial by Yue Fei, Qin Hui took the cynical step of ordering the withdrawal of the troops of generals Zhang Jun and Liu Guangshi from the front in Huaibei. He then told Emperor Gaozong that Yue Fei's army was now an isolated, orphan army in the Central Plains, and therefore should no longer stay there in such an exposed position. He urged Emperor Gaozong to order an immediate withdrawal by Yue Fei.

Yue Fei was waiting expectantly for Emperor Gaozong's edict that would authorize him to continue his march toward the Jin capital, but what he received was a gold-colored tablet bearing the urgent order for him to withdraw his troops. When Yue Fei was still recovering from the shock of the first gold tablet, the second gold tablet arrived on a fast horse, and a third, then a fourth and so forth until he received a total of twelve. Yue Fei gave up any hope of seeing Emperor Gaozong change his mind; he said with anger and tears streaming down his cheeks, "I never would have imagined that my ten years of effort would come to naught overnight."

News of Yue Fei's withdrawal from Zhuxian shocked the inhabitants, who poured into the streets. Some stopped Yue Fei's horse and said with tears in their eyes, "The Jin army knows we welcomed the government troops with incense burners and cartfuls of food. When you leave, we are certain to be killed."

Yue Fei also shed tears of sadness. He asked his soldiers to show the crowd Emperor Gaozong's edict and said, "The central government issued this top-priority order. I couldn't stay here in defiance of the order."

百姓们见留不住岳飞，都放声痛哭，兵士们也个个心酸，掩着脸哭。整个朱仙镇响起一片哭声。

岳飞心里不忍，宣布暂缓五天撤兵，让愿意跟随他们的百姓一起走。过了五天，岳家军开始撤兵的时候，当地百姓成群结队随军南迁。后来，岳飞奏请朝廷，把这些百姓安置在南方安家垦荒。

兀术打听到岳家军已走，马上重整旗鼓，向南进攻。本来被岳飞收复的河南许多州县，一下子又丢失得精光。

秦桧和宋高宗决心向金朝求和。他们恐怕受岳飞、韩世忠等人的阻挠，把他们召回京城，让韩世忠做枢密使，岳飞做枢密副使，名义上是提升，实际上是解除了他们的兵权。

Realizing they were unable to make Yue Fei stay, the inhabitants broke into loud sobs and the soldiers also cried with their hands covering their faces. The air reverberated with the sound of weeping in the town of Zhuxian.

Yue Fei could not bear leaving immediately, and announced that the withdrawal would be pushed back by five days, so that those inhabitants so disposed could leave with the troops. Five days later, the withdrawing troops were followed by large numbers of local people on the journey south. Later Yue Fei would request the central government to resettle these people in the south in areas where labor was in demand for land reclamation.

When Wuzhu received reports that General Yue's Army was gone for good, he immediately resumed his southern campaign. The many regions and counties in Henan recovered by Yue Fei once again fell into Jin hands.

Qin Hui and Emperor Gaozong had made up their mind to reconcile with the Jin Dynasty. Not wishing to be hamstrung by the likes of Yue Fei and Han Shizhong, they summoned these generals back to the capital and made Han Shizhong Military Affairs Commissioner and Yue Fei Deputy Military Affairs Commissioner. It was a promotion in name, but was in fact designed to strip them of their control over the army.

秦桧夺了岳飞的兵权，就派人向金朝求和。公元1141年十一月，金朝派使者到临安，谈判议和条件。谈判结果：宋、金之间，东面以淮河为界，西面以大散关（今陕西宝鸡西南）为界，南宋向金朝称臣，每年向金朝进贡银绢各二十五万。历史上把这次屈辱投降的和约叫做“绍兴和议”（绍兴是高宗的年号）。

After Yue Fei was stripped of his control over the army, Qin Hui sent a delegation to the Jin Dynasty to sue for peace. In November 1141 AD, the Jin government sent a delegation to Lin'an to negotiate terms of the peace accord. The final accord included the following provisions: the Song-Jin boundary would be demarcated along the Huai River in the east and Dasan Pass (southwest of modern-day Baoji, Shaanxi Province) in the west; the Southern Song in submission to the Jin would pay an annual tribute of 250,000 taels of silver and 250,000 bolts of silk. This peace agreement is known to Chinese history as the "Treaty of Shaoxing" (Shaoxing was an era name of Emperor Gaozong). It was in fact an agreement of humiliation and surrender by the Southern Song Dynasty.

21、“莫须有”冤狱

绍兴和议之后，兀术派使者送密信给秦桧说：“你天天向咱们求和，但是留着岳飞，我们不放心。一定得想法子把他除掉。”

秦桧接到主子的密信，就向岳飞下毒手了。

秦桧先唆使他的同党，监察御史万俟卨（音 mò qí xié，万俟是姓）向朝廷上了一道奏章，攻击岳飞骄傲自大，捏造了岳飞在金兵进攻淮西的时候，拥兵不救，放弃阵地等许多“罪名”。万俟卨开了第一炮以后，又有一批秦桧同党接二连三上奏章攻击岳飞。

岳飞知道秦桧跟他过不去，就主动要求辞去枢密副使的职务，高宗马上批准。

事情并没有到此结束。大将张俊原来是岳飞的上司，后来岳飞立了大功，遭到张俊的妒忌。秦桧知道张俊对岳飞不满，就勾结张俊，唆使岳家军的部将王贵、王俊，诬告另一个部将张

21. "A Plausible Case"

After the signing of the "Treaty of Shaoxing", Wuzhu sent an emissary bearing a confidential letter to Qin Hui, which read, "You keep assuring us of your desire for peace. But as long as Yue Fei lives, we will not feel reassured. A way must be found to get rid of him."

After receiving this secret missive from his master, Qin Hui set to work to engineer Yue Fei's downfall.

Investigating Censor Moqi Xie fired the first salvo. At the instigation of his political ally, Qin Hui, he wrote a memorial which denounced Yue Fei for his arrogance. He invented out of whole cloth the story that Yue Fei refused to send his army to relieve defenders of Huaixi when they were under Jin attack, and that he once left the battlefield without authorization. This was followed by successive salvos fired by other partisans of Qin Hui's cause.

Yue Fei knew that Qin Hui was out to get him, so he volunteered to resign from his post of Deputy Military Affairs Commissioner. Emperor Gaozong readily approved his resignation.

The matter did not end there. One of the top generals, Zhang Jun, once Yue Fei's superior, became jealous of Yue Fei for his feats on the battlefield. Aware of Zhang Jun's resentment of Yue Fei's successes, Qin Hui in collusion with Zhang Jun incited subalterns Wang Gui and Wang Jun in the Yue Army to falsely accuse another subaltern Zhang Xian of intending to take control

宪想占据襄阳，发动兵变，帮助岳飞夺回兵权，还诬告岳飞的儿子岳云曾经写信给张宪，秘密策划这件事。

秦桧根据王贵、王俊两个奸徒的诬告，先把张宪抓起来送进大理寺大狱，严刑拷打，张宪宁死不招。接着，秦桧又奏请高宗下令逮捕岳飞、岳云，到大理寺受审。

秦桧的使者去逮捕岳飞，岳飞笑着对使者说：“上有天，下有地，会证明我是无罪的。”

岳飞、岳云两人被逮捕到大理寺的时候，张宪已被拷打得遍体鳞伤，浑身是血，不像个人样儿。岳飞见了心里又难过，又气愤。

审问岳飞的就是万俟卨。万俟卨拿出王贵、王俊的诬告状，放在岳飞面前，吆喝着说：“朝廷哪里亏待你们三人，为什么要谋反？”

岳飞说：“我没有什么对不起国家的地方。你们掌管国法的人，可不能诬陷忠良啊！”

旁边一些官员们也七嘴八舌地附和万俟卨，硬说岳飞想谋反。岳飞知道这批家伙都是秦桧的同党，申辩也没有用，就长叹一声说：“我今天落在奸贼的手里，虽然有一片忠心，也没法申诉了。”

of Xiangyang in order to mount a mutiny to help Yue Fei wrest back his control over the army. They also falsely accused Yue Yun Ison of Yue Fei of writing to Zhang Xian to make secret plans for the mutiny.

Based on the false testimony of the traitors Wang Gui and Wang Jun, Qin Hui arrested Zhang Xian and put him in the jail of the Court of Judicial Review, where he was tortured. However, Zhang Xian adamantly refused to confess to the fabricated crime. Soon after, Qin Hui requested Emperor Gaozong to order the arrest of Yue Fei and Yue Yun and put them on trial before the Court of Judicial Review.

When Qin Hui's people arrived to arrest him, Yue Fei said with a smile, "Heaven and Earth be my witness! I will be vindicated and cleared."

When Yue Fei and Yue Yun were taken to the Court of Judicial Review, they found a bloodied, almost unrecognizable Zhang Xian covered with bruises and injuries sustained during his torture. The sight filled Yue Fei with sadness and anger.

The trial judge was Moqi Xie. He placed the false testimony of Wang Gui and Wang Jun before Yue Fei and asked in a stern voice, "Hasn't the government been good to you? Why are you planning a mutiny?"

Yue Fei replied, "I have done nothing against the government. You are in charge of law and justice. You must not use trumped-up charges to frame officials loyal to the government and country."

Other officials present also echoed Moqi Xie, insisting that Yue Fei had seditious intentions. Yue Fei understood the futility of arguing with these partisans of Qin Hui's clique. He said with a deep sigh, "I've fallen into the hands of a bunch of traitorous thugs.

秦桧又派御史中丞何铸审问。岳飞一句话也不回答，他扯开上衣，露出脊梁让何铸看，只见岳飞背上刺着“精忠报国”四个大字，痕迹很深。何铸一看，大为震动，不敢再审，就把岳飞押回监狱，再看了一些案卷，觉得说岳飞谋反确实没有证据，只好向秦桧照实回报。

秦桧认为何铸同情岳飞，不再让他审问，仍叫万俟卨罗织罪状。万俟卨一口咬定岳云曾经写信给张宪，布置夺军谋反的计划。他们没有物证，就诬说原信已经被张宪烧毁了。

万俟卨反复拷问岳飞等三人，岳飞受尽酷刑，什么都不承认。有一天，万俟卨又逼岳飞写供词，岳飞在纸上只写下八个大字：“天日昭昭，天日昭昭。”

这个案件拖了两个月，审讯毫无结果。朝廷官员都知道岳飞冤枉，有些官员大胆上奏章替岳飞伸冤，结果也遭到秦桧陷害。

老将韩世忠忍不住亲自去找秦桧，责问他凭什么说岳飞谋

"There's no point in trying to prove to you my loyalty and patriotism."

Qin Hui had assigned Vice Censor-in-Chief He Zhu to try Yue Fei. When he began questioning Yue Fei, Yue Fei pulled up his shirt without uttering a word and showed He Zhu his bare back. What greeted He Zhu's eyes were the four deeply tattooed characters, *jing zhong bao guo* ("Dedicated to the service of the country"). He Zhu was so shaken that he could not go on with the inquiry. He remanded Yue Fei to his cell. After reviewing some more material related to the case, he could find no evidence to support the allegation of Yue Fei's seditious intent. He truthfully reported his conclusion to Qin Hui.

Sensing He Zhu's sympathy for Yue Fei, Qin Hui took him off the case and instructed Moqi Xie to continue fabricating charges against Yue Fei. Moqi Xie insisted that Yue Yun had written to Zhang Xian to make plans for a mutiny. Unable to provide any material evidence, they alleged Zhang Xian had destroyed the letters.

Moqi Xie put the three defendants through more torture, but Yue Fei would not give them the satisfaction of a confession. One day, when Moqi Xie tried to force Yue Fei to compose a confession, Yue Fei wrote down these eight characters: *tian ri zhao zhao, tian ri zhao zhao* ("Heaven be my witness, heaven be my witness").

After dragging on for two months, the trial still had not produced any conclusion. Everyone in government knew Yue Fei had been framed. However, some who had the courage to petition the Emperor to clear Yue Fei's name themselves became victims of Qin Hui's reprisals.

The venerated general Han Shizhong went to see Qin Hui.

反，到底有什么证据。秦松蛮横地说：“岳云给张宪的信，虽然没有证据，但是这件事莫须有（就是‘也许有’的意思）。”

韩世忠气愤地说：“莫须有”三个字，怎能叫天下人心服！”

韩世忠反复力争，没有结果，就自己上奏章把枢密使职务

辞了。

有一天，秦桧上朝回家，跟他妻子王氏在东窗下一起喝酒。秦桧手里拿着一只柑子，心神不定地用手指甲在柑子皮上乱划。王氏是个比秦桧还狠毒的人，她看出秦桧对要不要马上杀岳飞，还在犹豫，冷笑着说：“你这老头儿，好没有决断，要知道缚虎容易放虎难啊！”

秦桧听了王氏的话，狠了狠心，马上亲手写了一个纸条，秘密派人送到监狱。公元1142年一月的一个夜里，岳飞这位年仅三十九岁的民族英雄在牢里被害牺牲。岳云、张宪同时被害。

and demanded evidence of Yue Fei's alleged plans for a mutiny. Qin Hui said in an arrogant and cavalier manner, "Although there is no evidence of Yue Yun's writing to Zhang Xian, one can make a plausible case of it."

Han Shizhong said angrily, "How can your plausible case convince the country?"

Han Shizhong's repeated efforts proved fruitless and he resigned as Military Affairs Commissioner.

One day after work, Qin Hui was drinking with his wife Wang by a window. Wang noticed him fiddling with an orange, absent-mindedly gouging the peel with his fingernail. Wang, who was even more ruthless than Qin Hui, understood that Qin Hui was still of two minds about whether to kill Yue Fei immediately. Wang said with a sinister snort, "You indecisive fool! It's easier to tie a tiger down than to set it free."

Wang's warning helped make up Qin Hui's mind. He immediately wrote a note which was secretly delivered to the prison. In a night in January 1142 AD, the patriotic national hero Yue Fei was murdered. He was only 39. Yue Yun and Zhang Xian suffered the same fate that night.

岳飞被害以后，临安狱卒隗顺偷偷地把他的遗骨埋葬起来。直到宋高宗死后，岳飞的冤狱得到平反昭雪，人们把岳飞的遗骨改葬在西湖边栖霞岭上，后来又在岳墓的东面修建了岳庙。现在，在庄严雄伟的岳庙大殿里，端坐着全身戎装的岳飞塑像，塑像上方悬挂的匾额上，刻着岳飞亲笔写的“还我河山”四个大字，使人肃然起敬。在岳飞墓门对面，还放着用生铁浇铸的秦桧、王氏、万俟卨和张俊四个反缚双手的跪像，反映了人民对民族英雄的景仰和对卖国贼的憎恨。

After Yue Fei's murder, a prison warden in Lin'an named Kui Shun secretly buried his remains. Yue Fei's name was cleared only after the death of Emperor Gaozong, and his remains were moved to Qixia Peak for proper burial. A Yue Fei Temple was added later east of his tomb. A statue of Yue Fei clad in battle gear now sits in the great hall of the Yue Temple. Above the statue hangs an awe-inspiring board inscribed with the four characters, *huan wo shan he* ("Give back my country") in Yue Fei's handwriting. Opposite the tomb are four cast-iron kneeling figures with their hands tied behind their backs. They are the despised and hated traitors Qin Hui, his wife Wang, Moqi Xie and Zhang Jun. This arrangement is designed to reflect popular admiration for a national hero and revulsion for traitors.

22、成吉思汗统一蒙古

公元1206年，蒙古各部落首领在斡难河（今鄂嫩河，韩昌w0）边，举行了一次盛大的集会，公推铁木真做全蒙古的大汗（就是大帝的意思），并且给他上了一个称号，叫成吉思汗。

铁木真本来是蒙古族孛儿只斤部酋长也速该的儿子。他幼年的时候，亲王朝廷治着对蒙古族人民实行残酷统治，蒙古各部落之间也互相打冤家。蒙古族人民的生活十分苦难。铁木真的祖先俺巴孩就被金朝皇帝杀害的。

铁木真九岁那年，也速该把铁木真带到一个朋友家去订亲。他把铁木真留在朋友家里独自回家，赶了一段路，肚子饿得慌，想找点东西吃，正好看见有一批塔塔儿部人在草原上举行宴会。他下马走进人群，按照当地风俗，参加了塔塔儿人的宴会。

塔塔儿部和孛儿只斤部打过冤家，也速该没想到这一层。塔塔儿部却有人认出了也速该，偷偷地在也速该吃的食物里放了毒药。也速该在离开宴会回家的路上，肚子疼得支不住，才想到刚才在宴会上中了毒，但是懊悔也来不及了。他背着疼痛赶回家里，就咽了气。

也速该一死，孛儿只斤部失掉了首领，都散了伙。原来归

22. Genghis Khan Unifies the Mongols

In 1206 AD, the chiefs of the Mongol tribes held a kuriltai ("Great Assembly") by the Onon River, at which Timujin was hailed as the Great Khan, with the title of Genghis Khan. Timujin's father Yisugei was a chieftain of the Mongol Borjigin clan. He grew up under the ruthless rule of the Jin Dynasty over the Mongol people. Life was made more unbearable by the constant feuds between different Mongol clans. One of Timujin's ancestors was killed by a Jin emperor.

When Timujin was nine, his father Yisugei took him to a friend's home to cement arrangements for his betrothal. Yisugei left Timujin at the friend's home and set out for home by himself. After traveling for a while he was famished and was looking for something to eat when he saw a group of Tartars having a feast on the steppe. He dismounted and walked into the reveling crowd and joined in the feast, as was the local custom.

There was a feud between the Tartars and the Borjigin clan, but Yisugei did not give it too much thought at the time. He was however recognized by the Tartars, and someone poisoned his food. On his way home after leaving the feast, he had an excruciating pain in his abdomen. He realized he must have been poisoned at the feast, but it was already too late. He died soon after he reached home.

In the aftermath of Yisugei's death, the headless Borjigin clan

附也速该的泰亦赤部也脱离了他们，还带走了不少也速该的奴隶和牲畜。铁木真的家境就一天不如一天了。

泰亦赤部的首领怕铁木真长大起来向他们报仇，就带人马捉拿铁木真，想把他杀害。铁木真得到消息，连忙逃到一座森林里。

铁木真在森林里躲了九天九夜，没吃没喝，忍不住饥饿，走了出来。他一出森林，就被泰亦赤人抓住了。泰亦赤人给他戴上木枷，带到各个营帐里去示众。有一天，泰亦赤部的首领和百姓都在翰难河边举行宴会，只留了一个年轻的看守监视他。铁木真趁看守不防备，举起木枷把看守砸昏了，逃了出来。

以后，铁木真和他的母亲、弟妹又躲进深山里，靠捉土拨鼠、野鼠当饭吃，日子过得更艰苦了。

年轻的铁木真为了恢复父亲的事业，想尽办法，渐渐把他们部落失散的亲属和百姓聚集拢来。他在跟别的部落的战斗中打了胜仗，力量渐渐壮大起来。

铁木真跟另一个部落的首领札木合是朋友。他俩常常白天在树荫下举行宴会，晚间睡在一起，要好得像自己兄弟一样。但是，后来铁木真力量强大了，札木合部下有人投奔铁木真，札木合很不高兴。有一次，札木合的弟弟抢夺铁木真的马群，被

disbanded. Yisugei's followers, including members of the Taiyichi clan that had sworn fealty to him, defected to other clans, taking with them Yisugei's slaves and cattle, thus further impoverishing Timujin's family.

Fearing that Timujin would try to take revenge on them when he grew up, the chief of the Taiyichi clan sent a party after Timujin with the aim of killing him. Timujin was alerted and went into hiding in a forest.

He laid low in the forest for nine days, without food or drink. When he was forced by hunger to walk out of the forest, the Taiyichi pursuers immediately captured him. He was paraded past the tented homes of the clan in a pillory. One day, the Taiyichi chief and his tribesmen gathered for a feast by the Onon River. They left a lone, inexperienced guard to watch over Timujin. Timujin waited until the guard became distracted, and then knocked him unconscious with his pillory, escaping.

Timujin, his mother and his siblings once again took to the hills, where they sustained themselves by snaring rodents. Life became harsher than ever for them.

The young Timujin was determined to take over the mantle of his father. He was able through his tireless effort to locate and regroup blood relations and members of the clan who had dispersed. His power grew in the wake of numerous victories in his battles against other tribes.

Timujin had a friend Jamuka, who was the chief of another tribe. They had frequent daytime feasts in the shade of trees, and slept in the same bed at night, close as brothers. However, Jamuka was not amused when some of his followers went over to the increasingly powerful Timujin to offer their fealty. A

铁木真部下杀了，双方发生了冲突。札木合集合了他统治的十三部一共三万人马攻打铁木真。

铁木真也不肯示弱，把部下的三万人马分成十三支队伍，抵抗札木合的进攻。双方在斡难河边的草原上展开了一场大战，铁木真抵挡不住，败退了。札木合把抓住的战俘成批杀害。这件事引起札木合部下的不满，纷纷脱离札木合投奔铁木真。铁木真虽然打了败仗，实力反而更壮大了。

铁木真没有忘记杀害他父亲的仇人塔塔儿部首领蔑古真。没有多久，蔑古真得罪了金朝，金朝派丞相完颜襄约铁木真配合进攻塔塔儿部。铁木真认为这是个报仇的好机会，就和金兵一起夹击塔塔儿部，把塔塔儿部打得全军覆没，俘获了大批百姓和牲畜、辎重。

金王朝认为铁木真立了功劳，封他做前锋司令官。

以后，铁木真又经过几次战斗，陆续消灭了蒙古高原好几个部落，终于统一了蒙古。他被蒙古各部首领推举当了大汗，这就是后来举世闻名的成吉思汗。

成吉思汗即位以后，建立了军事和政治制度，使用了蒙古文字，使蒙古成了一个强大的汗国。但是金朝还把蒙古当作它

confrontation of the two sides occurred when Timujin's people killed Jamuka's younger brother when he was trying to rustle Timujin's cattle. Jamuka put together a force of 30,000 men from the thirteen sub clans under his control to attack Timujin.

Rising to the challenge, Timujin deployed thirteen contingents totaling 30,000 men to engage the Jamuka forces. The two sides fought a fierce battle on the steppes by the Onon River. Timujin lost the battle, and Jamuka killed large numbers of prisoners of war. This had the effect of disaffecting his own followers, who defected to Timujin in droves. Ironically, defeat made Timujin stronger.

Timujin had never forgotten about Mieguzhen, the chief of the Tartars, who killed his father. Mieguzhen incurred the displeasure of the Jin Dynasty. Wanyan Xiang, the Jin Chief Minister, formed an alliance with Timujin against the Tartars. Timujin grabbed this long-awaited opportunity to take his revenge on the Tartars. The joint forces of the Jin and Timujin routed the Tartar army, and large numbers of Tartar clansmen, cattle and large amounts of supplies were captured by the coalition. As a reward for his contribution in the campaign, the Jin government conferred on Timujin the title of Commander of the Vanguard.

In subsequent battles, Timujin conquered several tribes on the Mongolian plateau, and finally achieved the unification of the Mongol people. He was hailed as Great Khan by the chiefs of the Mongol tribes and is known to world history as Genghis Khan.

After his enthronement, Genghis Khan established a military and administrative system and a Mongolian writing system that contributed to building his khanate into a strong empire. In the meantime, the Jin empire continued to treat the Mongols as

的附属国，要成吉思汗向他们进贡。成吉思汗立志要改变这种屈辱的地位。

金章宗死后，太子完颜水济即位，派使者到蒙古下诏书，要成吉思汗下拜接受。成吉思汗问使者新皇帝是谁，使者告诉他是水济。成吉思汗轻蔑地吐了一口唾沫，说：“我原来以为中原主人是天上人做的，像这种庸碌无能的人也配做皇帝？”说罢，就把金朝的使者丢在一边，自己上马走了。

打那以后，成吉思汗就跟金朝决裂了。

公元1211年，成吉思汗决心大举进攻金朝。他登上高山对天祈祷，说：“金朝皇帝杀害我的祖先俺巴孩，请允许我报这个仇吧！”接着，他就选了三千名精锐骑兵南下。金将胡少虎带了三十万金兵抵抗，被蒙古军打得一败涂地。过了两年，蒙古兵又打进居庸关，围攻金朝的中京（今北京市）。成吉思汗跟他四个儿子兵分几路，在河北广大平原上横冲直撞，所向无敌。

这时候，金朝内部十分混乱，金主完颜水济被杀，新即位的金宣宗不得不向成吉思汗求和，献出大批金帛，把公主嫁给成吉思汗。成吉思汗才撤兵回去。

vassals, demanding tribute from Genghis Khan. Genghis Khan vowed to change this humiliating state of affairs.

When Wanyan Yongji, the Crown Prince, succeeded Emperor Zhangzong of the Jin Dynasty at his death, he sent an emissary to Mongolia bearing an edict. When the messenger bade Genghis Khan to receive the edict on his knees, Genghis Khan asked him who the new Emperor was. When he was told that Wanyan Yongji had just ascended the throne, Genghis Khan spat scornfully and said, "I thought the master of the Central Plains must be of celestial caliber. I'm surprised a mediocre, incompetent man like him could qualify for the throne." With that, he mounted his horse and rode off, leaving the Jin emissary behind.

Genghis Khan broke with the Jin after that incident.

In 1211 AD, Genghis Khan mounted a massive campaign against the Jin Dynasty. He went up a mountain and prayed to his god. "A Jin emperor killed one of my forefathers. Let me have my revenge!" Soon afterwards, he picked 3,000 of his best cavalrymen and led them south. These 3,000 men routed the 300,000 Jin troops led by General Hu Shaohu. Two years later, the Mongols breached the defenses of Juyong Pass and laid siege to Zhongjing (modern-day Beijing). The troops led by Genghis Khan and his four sons proved invincible as they waged war across the vast plains north of the Yellow River.

At this time, the Jin government was divided by internal strife, and Emperor Wanyan Yongji was killed in the upheaval. Emperor Xuanzong, who succeeded him, saw no alternative but to sue for peace with Genghis Khan. Genghis Khan withdrew his forces only after receiving large amounts of gold and silk, as well as a Jin princess in marriage.

成吉思汗打败了金朝，兵力更强大了。公元1219年，有一支蒙古商队受成吉思汗派遣到西方去，经过花刺子模（今里海东，咸海西），被当地的守将杀害。成吉思汗亲自率领二十万蒙古大军攻打花刺子模，接着，又向西攻打，占领了现在的中亚细亚各国，前锋一直打到现在的欧洲东部和伊朗北部，才带兵回国。

成吉思汗带兵西征的时候，曾经要西夏发兵帮助，西夏不但拒绝出兵，而且和金朝结了同盟。成吉思汗回来以后就决心灭掉西夏。在围攻西夏京城的最关键时刻，他自己却得了重病。他知道好不起来，就在病床上对部下将领说：“我们攻打金朝，要向宋朝借路。宋朝和金朝冤仇很深，一定会答应我们。”

After defeating the Jin Dynasty, Genghis Khan's army became more powerful. In 1219 AD, when a Mongol caravan dispatched by Genghis Khan passed Khorasm (east of the Caspian Sea and west of the Aral Sea) on its journey west, its members were massacred by the soldiers stationed in the city. Genghis Khan responded by personally leading 200,000 Mongol troops to attack Khorasm. He then pressed on westward and took control of areas in what is modern-day Central Asia. His vanguard advanced all the way to eastern Europe and northern Persia before he decided to turn back with his troops.

When Genghis Khan went on his western campaign, he requested support from the Western Xia, but they not only refused to contribute any troops to help him, but also entered an alliance with the Jin Dynasty. On his return from the western campaign, he set out to quash the Western Xia. In the final stages of the siege against the Xia capital, he fell seriously ill. Knowing he was not going to survive the illness, he said to his commanders, "When we attack the Jin, we need to pass through Song territory. The Song is certain to grant us passage because of the long-standing enmity between them."

成吉思汗死后，他的儿子窝阔台接替他做大汗。窝阔台按照成吉思汗的遗嘱，向南宋借路，包围金朝京城开封。公元1233年，蒙古军攻破开封，金哀宗逃到蔡州（今河南汝南）。蒙古又联合南宋围攻蔡州。

金哀宗派使者向宋理宗（宋宁宗的继子，名叫赵昀）求和，说：“金朝被灭，下一步就轮到宋国了，如果跟我们联合，对金、宋两国都有好处。”

宋理宗没有理睬他，金哀宗走投无路，只好自杀。公元1234年，金朝在蒙、宋两军夹攻下灭亡。

After his death, Genghis Khan was succeeded by his son Ögedei Khan. As instructed by Genghis Khan on his deathbed, Ögedei Khan negotiated passage through Song territory and encircled the Jin capital of Kaifeng. In 1233 AD, the Mongols breached the defenses of Kaifeng, forcing Emperor Aizong to flee to Caizhou (modern-day Ru'nan, Henan Province). With Southern Song support, the Mongols laid siege to Caizhou.

Emperor Aizong sent an emissary to Emperor Lizong of the Southern Song Dynasty to sue for peace. He said through the envoy, "If the Jin is conquered now, the next target will be the Song. An alliance between us will be in the interest of our two countries."

This peace overture was snubbed by Emperor Lizong. Emperor Aizong of the Jin Dynasty committed suicide out of despair. In 1234 AD, the Jin Dynasty was extinguished under the joint attack of the Mongols and the Song army.

23、贾似道误国

蒙古、南宋联合灭掉金朝以后，南宋乘机出兵，想收复开封、河南一带土地。窝阔台借口南宋破坏协议，进攻南宋。打这以后，蒙宋双方不断发生战争。

到窝阔台的侄儿蒙哥即位后，派他弟弟忽必烈和大将兀良合台进军云南，控制了西南地区。公元1258年，蒙哥分兵三路，进攻南宋。他自己亲率主力进攻合州（今四川合川），忽必烈攻打鄂州（今湖北武昌），另一路由兀良合台率领，从云南向北攻打潭州（今湖南长沙），准备三路会师后，直取临安。

蒙哥的军队进攻合州的时候，合州宋将王坚和全城军民奋起反抗，坚守合州东面的钓鱼城。蒙古军把钓鱼城围了五个月还没有攻下来，蒙哥却在攻城的时候被炮石打中，受了重伤，回到大营不久就死了。

23. Jia Sidao Sells the Country down the River

After the Jin Dynasty was destroyed by the Mongol-Song coalition forces, the Southern Song Dynasty wanted to push on and recover lost territory in the Henan area. That gave Ogedei Khan a pretext to mount a campaign against the Southern Song Dynasty for breaching their agreement. The Mongols and the Southern Song Dynasty were at war ever since.

After Ogedei Khan's nephew Mongke Khan ascended the throne, he sent his younger brother Kublai Khan and his general Uriyangqadai on a campaign against Yunnan, gaining control of southwest China. In 1258 AD, Mongke's army attacked the Southern Song Dynasty on three fronts. He himself led the main force to attack Hezhou (modern-day Hechuan, Sichuan Province); Kublai attacked Ezhou (modern-day Wuchang, Hubei Province); and, Uriyangqadai led an army north from Yunnan to attack Tanzhou (modern-day Changsha, Hunan Province). The three armies would then converge and advance on Lin'an.

When Mongke's army attacked Hezhou, it ran into fierce resistance by the local Song commander Wang Jian and the inhabitants, who heroically defended Diaoyu situated to the east of Hezhou. The Mongols were unable to take Diaoyu after five months of siege and attacks. In one of the offensives against the city, Mongke was seriously injured by a rock fired from a catapult. He died shortly after returning to camp.

忽必烈正向鄂州进兵，还没过江，得到蒙哥的死讯，有人劝他赶快回到北方去争夺汗位，忽必烈说：“我奉命来攻打宋朝，哪能空手回去？”

忽必烈观察了沿江的形势，就派几百人的敢死队当先锋，强渡长江。宋兵没有防备，果然溃败，蒙古兵就大举渡江，把鄂州围住。

警报一个接一个送到临安，把南宋王朝震动了。宋理宗命令各路宋军援救鄂州，又任命贾似道担任右丞相兼枢密使，到汉阳督战。

新任丞相贾似道，原是个不学无术的浪荡子，靠他的姐姐是宋理宗的宠妃，才得了官位。他当上官后，什么事都不干，经常带着一批歌女在西湖上喝酒作乐。有一天晚上，宋理宗在宫里登高眺望，看到西湖上灯火通明，就对左右侍臣说：“这一定是似道这小子。”

侍臣知道宋理宗宠着贾似道，就凑趣说：“别看他年纪轻轻，喜欢玩乐，他的才能大着呢。”

Kublai received news of Mongke's death as he was on the point of crossing the river to advance on Ezhou. Some urged him to go back north to claim the throne, but Kublai replied, "I have been ordered to attack the Song. I can't very well return empty-handed."

After surveying the landscape along the river, Kublai put together a suicide squad of a few hundred men as a vanguard unit to cross the Yangtze. The Song troops were surprised by the appearance of the vanguard and their defenses crumbled. The Mongols were now able to move the bulk of their troops across the river and surround Ezhou.

The Southern Song court in Lin'an was shaken by the bad news pouring in. Emperor Lizong ordered Song troops in other locations to race to the rescue of Ezhou, and sent Jia Sidao, newly appointed as Chief Minister and Military Affairs Commissioner, to Hanyang to oversee the war.

The newly appointed Chief Minister Jia Sidao was an uneducated loafer who got into the government only because his sister was a favorite concubine in Emperor Lizong's harem. He was often seen drinking and reveling on West Lake in the company of female singers, totally neglecting his official duties. One evening, Emperor Lizong saw bright lights on the West Lake as he looked out from a high point in his palace. He remarked to the ministers in attendance, "It must be this young fellow Sidao having a good time."

Well aware that Jia Sidao was in Emperor Lizong's good graces, the ministers quipped, "He may be young and fun-loving, but he sure possesses great abilities."

Ordered by Emperor Lizong to oversee the war on the front in Hanyang, Jia Sidao went despite his fears. Once, when he was

这回，宋理宗要他上汉阳前线督战，他只好硬着头皮去了。有一次，他听说前面有一队蒙古兵，吓得直打哆嗦，嘴里连声叫着：“怎么办？怎么办？”后来，蒙古兵抢了一些财物走了，贾似道才拍拍胸口，喘了口气。

忽必烈攻城越来越猛。贾似道眼看形势紧张，就瞒着朝廷，偷偷地派个亲信到蒙古营去求和，表示只要蒙古退兵，宋朝就愿意称臣，进贡银绢。忽必烈攻得正起劲，不肯就此罢休。正在这时候，忽必烈接到他妻子从北方捎来的密信，说蒙古一些贵族正在准备立他弟弟阿里不哥做大汗。忽必烈急着想回去争夺汗位，就答应了贾似道的请求，订下了秘密协定。贾似道答应把江北土地割给蒙古，并且每年向蒙古进贡银、绢各二十万。忽必烈得了贾似道的许诺，就急忙撤兵回北方去了。

贾似道回到临安，把私自订立和约的事瞒得严严实实，却抓了一些蒙古兵俘虏，吹嘘各路宋军取得大胜，不但赶跑了鄂州的蒙古兵，还把长江一带敌人的势力全部肃清了。

宋理宗听信了贾似道的弥天大谎，认为贾似道立了大功，专门下一道诏书，赞赏他奋不顾身，指挥有方，立刻给他加官进爵，

told that a Mongol detachment was not far away, he started shaking and asked pleadingly, "What's to be done? What's to be done?" In the end, the Mongols left after doing some looting, causing *Jia Sidao to breathe a sigh in relief.*

As Kublai intensified his offensives, Jia Sidao found the situation getting desperate. Without informing the central government, he sent a secret envoy he could trust to the Mongols to sue for peace, declaring that as long as the Mongols withdrew their forces, the Song government would be ready to submit to the Mongols and pay tribute in silver and silk. With his attack in full swing, Kublai rejected the ceasefire offer. At this time, Kublai received a confidential letter from his wife in the north, which said that some Mongol aristocrats were grooming his younger brother, Arik Boke, to be the next great Khan. In his rush to return to contend for the throne, Kublai agreed to Jia Sidao's offer and signed a secret pact with him. Jia Sidao promised to cede territory north of the river to the Mongols, and to pay an annual tribute of 200,000 taels of silver and 200,000 bolts of silk. Kublai hurriedly left with his troops after securing this promise.

Back in Lin'an, Jia Sidao did a good job of concealing the fact that he had made an unauthorized pact with the Mongols. With some Mongol prisoners of war in his custody, he bragged about the brilliant victories of the Song army, which not only drove away the Mongol troops attacking Ezhou, but mopped up all remnant pockets of resistance along the Yangtze.

Convinced by the whopping lies of Jia Sidao that he had made an outstanding contribution to the war effort, Emperor Lizong issued an edict praising him for his courage and his excellent performance as commander. Immediately, he promoted him and

忽必烈回到北方，得到大多数蒙古贵族的支持，即了大汗位。他想起了在鄂州跟贾似道订下的和议，就派使者都经到南来去，要求履行和约以定的条件。

都经到了真州（今江苏仪征），先派副使带信给贾似道。贾似道一听都经要到临安来，怕他的骗局露馅，赶快派人到真州把都经扣了起来。忽必烈听到这个消息，气得要命。那时候，蒙古内部发生了内讧，忽必烈的弟弟阿里不哥跟忽必烈争夺权力，发生了战争。忽必烈全力对付阿里不哥，只好暂时把南宋一头搁起来。

贾似道靠欺骗过日子，居然做了十几年的宰相。宋理宗死后，太子赵昀（音qi）即位，就是宋度宗。宋度宗封贾似道为太师，拜魏国公，地位高得没人能跟他比。贾似道一面故意来告老回家，一面又派亲信散播谣言，说蒙古军又要打过来了，刚即位的宋度宗就苦苦留他，这样一来，他的地位就越来越高了。度宗专门给他在西湖葛岭造了一座豪华的别墅。贾似道每天在葛岭过着享乐的生活，朝政大事，都得由官员到别墅去找他决定。

gave him a raise.

After returning to the north, with the support of a majority of the Mongol noblemen Kublai became the Great Khan. Remembering the pact he signed with Jia Sidao in Ezhou, he sent his emissary *Hao Jing* to the Southern Song Dynasty to demand the implementation of the terms of the agreement.

When *Hao Jing* arrived in Zhenzhou (modern-day Yizheng, Jiangsu Province), he sent his deputy with a letter to Jia Sidao. Upon learning that *Hao Jing* was coming to Lin'an, Jia Sidao sent his people to Zhenzhou to lock up *Hao Jing*, for fear that his web of lies would now unravel. Kublai Khan was furious at the perfidy of Jia Sidao, but he was in a power struggle with his younger brother *Arik Boko*, and had to devote all his energies to dealing with him. The problem with the Southern Song Dynasty was put on the back burners.

By weaving a web of deceit, Jia Sidao was able to cling to his post of Chief Minister for more than a decade. After the death of Emperor Lizong, Crown Prince Zhao Qi succeeded him as Emperor Duzong. Emperor Duzong appointed Jia Sidao as Grand Preceptor, and conferred on him the title of Duke of Wei. Jia Sidao was now at the zenith of his career. He pretended that he desired to retire. At the same time, he had his supporters put out rumors about an imminent attack by the Mongols. This caused the newly enthroned Emperor Duzong to beg him to stay in government. His political fortunes kept rising as a result. Emperor Duzong had a sumptuous villa built for Jia's exclusive use in the Geling Hills overlooking West Lake, where Jia Sidao indulged in a life of pleasure. Officials had to travel there to consult him and seek instructions on affairs of state.

忽必烈稳定了内部，打败了阿里不哥以后，在公元1271年称帝，改国号叫元。这就是元世祖。

元世祖借口南宋不执行和约，派大将刘整、阿术出兵进攻襄阳。宋军连战连败，襄阳城被困了五年。贾似道把前线的消息封锁起来，不让宋度宗知道。有个官员上奏章向宋度宗告急，奏章落在贾似道手里，那个官员马上被革职了。

有一天，贾似道上朝的时候，宋度宗问他：“听说襄阳城已经被蒙古兵围了几年，怎么办？”

贾似道故意装出惊讶的样子说：“蒙古兵早就给我们打退，陛下从哪儿听来这种消息？”

度宗说：“刚才听到一个宫女说起。”

散朝以后，贾似道查明了那个透露消息的宫女，找个借口把她杀死。打那以后，宋度宗再也听不到蒙古军进攻的消息了。

襄阳在蒙古兵围攻下，越来越危急。贾似道却每天躲在他的葛岭别墅里。有一次，有个亲信官员去找他，他正趴在地上跟他的几个侍女斗蟋蟀。那个官员拍拍贾似道的肩膀说：“这难

After defeating Arik Boke and restoring the stability of his government, Kublai proclaimed himself Emperor in 1271 AD, giving the new dynasty the name Yuan, and himself the title of Emperor Shizu.

On the pretext of the Southern Song Dynasty's non-compliance with the peace treaty, Emperor Shizu sent his generals Liu Zheng and Ashu on a campaign against Xiangyang, defeating the Song army in battle after battle. The siege of Xiangyang lasted for five years. Jia Sidao kept Emperor Duzong in the dark about the situation on the Xiangyang front. When an official submitted a memorial informing the Emperor of the critical situation, it was intercepted by Jia Sidao, who immediately had the official fired.

One day Jia Sidao was asked by Emperor Duzong during the daily audience, "I've heard that Xiangyang has been in a siege by the Mongols for several years now. What should be done?"

Jia Sidao said with feigned surprise, "The Mongols have been beaten back by us years ago. Where did His Majesty get that kind of news?"

Emperor Duzong said, "I just heard it from a maid-in-waiting."

After the audience was over, Jia Sidao found out the identity of the maid who leaked out the news, and had her killed on some trumped-up charge. From then on Emperor Duzong would never again hear any news about Mongol attacks.

The situation in Xiangyang was getting increasingly untenable under the offensives of the Mongols. However, Jia Sidao insulated himself from the crisis in his villa on Geling Hills. Once, a trusted aide found him on his haunches watching crickets fight in the company of maids. The official tapped on Jia Sidao's shoulder

道也是国家大事吗？”贾似道玩得正起劲，也没当一回事。

襄阳终于被元兵攻破了。南宋王朝大为震动。这个时候，贾似道要再瞞也瞞不住，就把责任推给襄阳守将，把守将革职了事。

元世祖看到南宋这样腐败，决定一鼓作气消灭南宋。他派左丞相伯颜率领元兵二十万，分两路进军，一路从西面攻鄂州，另一路从东面攻扬州。

这时候，宋度宗病死了，贾似道拥立了一个四岁的幼儿赵昀（音 xian）做皇帝。伯颜攻下鄂州，沿江东下，直取临安。贾似道一面带领七万宋军驻守芜湖，一面派使臣到元营求和。伯颜拒绝议和，命令元军在长江两岸发起进攻，宋军全线崩溃，贾似道逃回扬州。到了这个时候，南宋灭亡的局势已经无法挽回了。

and asked, "Is this an important affair of state?" Engrossed in the game Jia Sidao took no notice of the remark.

When Xiangyang finally fell to the Mongols, the event sent shock waves through the Southern Song government. No longer able to keep the lid on the situation, Jia Sidao blamed the whole thing on the commanders leading the defense of Xiangyang, and fired them.

Witnessing the corruption and rotten state of the Southern Song government, Emperor Shizu of Yuan decided to press his military advantage and overthrow it. He sent his Chief Minister Boyan with 200,000 troops to attack Ezhou from the west and Yangzhou from the east.

By this time, Emperor Duzong had died, and Jia Sidao set up the four-year-old Zhao Xian as Emperor. After taking Ezhou, Boyan's army moved east along the river to attack Lin'an. Jia Sidao led 70,000 Song troops to defend Wuhu, while at the same time sending envoys to the Yuan camp to sue for peace. Boyan snubbed the peace overtures and ordered the Yuan army to launch attacks along both banks of the Yangtze. The Song resistance crumbled on all fronts and Jia Sidao fled back to Yangzhou. The Southern Song Dynasty's fate was now sealed.

24、文天祥起兵

元兵乘胜南下，进逼临安。四岁的皇帝赵昀，只是挂个名的。他祖母谢太后和大臣们一商量，赶紧下诏书要各地将领带兵援救朝廷。诏书发到各地，响应的人很少。只有赣州的州官文天祥和鄂州（今湖北钟祥）守将张世杰两人立刻起兵。

文天祥是我国历史上著名的民族英雄，吉州庐陵（今江西吉安）人。他从小爱读历史上忠臣烈士的的传记，立志要向他们学习。二十岁那年，他到临安参加进士考试，在试卷里写了他的救国主张，受到主考官的赏识，中了状元。

文天祥在朝廷做了官之后，马上发现贾似道和一批宦官都是祸国殃民的好臣。有一回，蒙古军攻打南宋，宦官董宋臣劝宋理宗放弃临安逃跑，文天祥马上上了一道奏章要求杀掉董宋

24. Wen Tianxiang Raises an Army

The Yuan army continued its triumphant march and was getting closer and closer to Lin'an. Four-year-old Zhao Xian was the nominal Emperor. After consulting the ministers, his grandmother, Empress Dowager Xie, rushed out an edict calling on the military commanders of various regions to come to the rescue of the government. The edict elicited little response except from Wen Tianxiang, the governor of Ganzhou, and Zhang Shijie, the general defending Chengzhou (modern-day Zhongxiang, Hubei Province), who immediately mobilized their troops.

Wen Tianxiang, a well-known national hero in Chinese history, was born in Luling of Jizhou (modern-day Ji'an, Jiangxi Province). Since a child, he enjoyed reading biographies of patriotic statesmen and heroes who gave their lives for the country, and was determined to emulate their example. When at the age of twenty he took the court-administered civil service exam in Lin'an, he so impressed the presiding examiners with his essay on ways to pull the country out of its current crisis that he won top honors.

Soon after entering public service at the level of the central government, Wen Tianxiang discovered that Jia Sidao and many powerful eunuchs had a cynical disregard for the well being of the country and the people. At the time of a Mongol campaign against the Southern Song Dynasty, Dong Songchen, a eunuch, urged

臣，免得动摇民心。为了这件事，他反被撤了职。后来，他回到临安担任起草诏书的工作，又因为得罪贾似道，在他三十七岁那年，竟被迫退休。一直到了南宋王朝快要灭亡的危急时刻，他才被派到江西去担任贛州的州官。

文天祥接到朝廷诏书，立刻招募了三万人马，准备赶到临安去。有人劝他说：“现在元兵长驱直入，您带了这些临时招募起来的人马去抵抗，好比赶着羊群去跟猛虎斗，明摆着要失败，何苦呢？”

文天祥泰然回答说：“这个道理我何尝不知道。但是国家养兵多年，现在临安危急，却没有一兵一卒为国难出力，岂不叫人痛心！我明知道自己力量有限，宁愿以死殉国。但愿天下忠义的人，闻风而起，人多势大，国家才有保全的希望。”

文天祥排除种种阻挠，带兵到了临安。右丞相陈宜中派他到平江（今江苏苏州）防守。这时候，元朝统帅伯颜已经渡过长江，分兵三路进攻临安。其中一路从建康出发，越过平江，直取

Emperor Lizong of Song to flee Lin'an. Wen Tianxiang immediately wrote a memorial calling for the execution of Dong Songchun to prevent public panic. This advice caused him to be stripped of his office. He eventually returned to Lin'an in a post writing speeches drafting edicts for the Emperor, but he managed to step on the toes of Jia Sidao and was forced into retirement at the age of 37. It was not until the Southern Song Dynasty was in imminent danger of foundering that he was sent to Jiangxi as governor of Ganzhou.

Shortly after receiving the edict calling him back into service, Wen Tianxiang recruited 30,000 men with the intention of racing to Lin'an. Some advised against the idea: "The Yuan army has penetrated deep into Song territory against crumbling resistance. If you try to stop them with your hastily formed unit, you will be sending a flock of sheep into the jaws of tigers. Why do you want to do something that's doomed to fail?"

Wen Tianxiang replied calmly, "I am aware of that. But I am pained to think that after years in the pay of the government, not one officer or soldier is now willing to come to the aid of the government at a time of crisis. I am fully aware of my limitations, but I'm ready to die for my country. I hope that by doing so I will inspire and mobilize my patriotic countrymen. The country has a chance of being saved only when there is a general mobilization of the masses."

Overcoming all hurdles, Wen Tianxiang finally brought his army to Lin'an. Chen Yizhong, the Chief Minister, sent him to Pingjiang (modern-day Suzhou, Jiangsu Province) to oversee the defenses there. At this time, the Yuan army commanded by Boyan had already crossed the Yangtze and was marching on Lin'an on three fronts. The Yuan troops that had left Jiankang and had by

独松关（今浙江余杭）。陈宜中又命令文天祥退守独松关。文天祥刚离开平江，独松关已经被元军攻破，想再回平江，平江也失守了。

文天祥回到临安，跟鄂州来的将领张世杰商量，向朝廷建议，集中兵力跟元军拼个死活。但是胆小的陈宜中说什么也不同意。

伯颜带兵到了离临安只有三十里的皋亭山（今杭州东北）。朝廷里一些没有骨气的大臣，包括左丞相留梦炎都溜走了。谢太后和陈宜中惊慌失措，赶紧派了一名官员带着国玺和求降表到伯颜大营求和。

伯颜指定要南宋丞相亲自去谈判。

陈宜中害怕被扣留，不敢到元营去，逃往南方去了；张世杰不愿投降，气得带兵乘上海船出海。

谢太后没办法，只好宣布文天祥接替陈宜中做右丞相，要他到伯颜大营去谈判投降。

文天祥答应到元营去，但是他心里另有打算。他带着大臣吴坚、贾余庆等到了元营，见了伯颜，根本不提求和的事，反而严正地责问伯颜说：“你们究竟是想跟我朝友好呢，还是存心消灭我朝？”

now marched passed Pingjiang, threatening Dusong Pass (modern-day Yuhang, Zhejiang Province). Chen Yizhong ordered Wen Tianxiang to pull his troops back to defend the Pass. However, Wen Tianxiang had barely left Pingjiang when Dusong Pass fell to the Yuan troops. Then by the time he turned around to return to Pingjiang, Pingjiang had also fallen.

Wen Tianxiang returned to Lin'an, where he had a discussion with General Zhang Shijie from Chengzhou. Together they urged the central government to concentrate its forces in a decisive battle with the Yuan army. However, the spineless Chen Yizhong would hear none of it.

By this time, Boyan's army had come to Mount Gaoling (northeast of modern-day Hangzhou), within fifteen kilometers of Lin'an. The spineless ministers, including Liu Mengyan, the Chief Minister, had all deserted the court. In a panic, Empress Dowager Xie and Chen Yizhong hastened to send an official to Boyan with the imperial seal and an offer to surrender. Boyan insisted on negotiating with the Song Chief Minister in person, but Chen Yizhong fled south for fear that once in the Yuan camp he would be detained. Inimical to the idea of surrendering, General Zhang Shijie set out to sea with his troops.

Empress Dowager Xie was left no choice but to announce the replacement of Chen Yizhong by Wen Tianxiang as Chief Minister, and to send him to negotiate the surrender with Boyan. Wen Tianxiang agreed to go to the Yuan camp, but had his own agenda. When he took his co-ministers Wu Jian and Jia Yuqing to meet with Boyan, he mentioned not a word about peace but reproachfully asked Boyan, "Do you have good will toward my country or are you bent on extinguishing the Song?"

伯颜说：“我们皇上（指元世祖）的意思很清楚，并不是要消灭宋朝。”

文天祥说：“既然是这样，那么请你们立刻把军队撤退到平江或者嘉兴。如果你们硬要消灭我朝，南方军民一定跟你们打到底，对你们未必有好处。”

伯颜把脸一沉，用威胁的口气说：“你们再不老实投降，只怕饶不得你们。”

文天祥也气愤地说：“我是堂堂南宋宰相。现在国家危急，我已经准备好拼一死以报答国家，哪怕刀山火海，我也毫不害怕。”

文天祥洪亮的声音，庄严的语言，把伯颜的威胁顶了回去。周围的元将个个吓得惊慌失色。

双方会见之后，伯颜传出话来，让别的使者先回临安去跟谢太后商量，却把文天祥留下来。文天祥知道伯颜不怀好意，向伯颜抗议。伯颜装出若无其事的样子说：“您别发火。两国议和大事，正需要您留下商量嘛。”

随同文天祥到元营的吴坚、贾余庆回到临安，把文天祥拒绝投降的事回奏谢太后。谢太后一心投降，改任贾余庆做右丞相，到元营去求降。伯颜接受降表后，再请文天祥进营帐，告诉

Boyan said, "My Emperor is very clear about this. We are not out to extinguish the Song."

Wen Tianxiang said, "In that case, please immediately pull back your troops to Pingjiang or Jiaying. If you insist on wiping the Song off the map, the people in the south and the Song army will fight you to the bitter end, and you will reap the bitter fruit."

Boyan's face darkened. He said in a threatening tone, "If you don't submit immediately, you'll suffer."

Wen Tianxiang riposted indignantly, "As Chief Minister of the Song Dynasty, I am fully prepared to die for my country in this time of crisis. I am not afraid of going through a mountain of swords or a sea of flames."

Boyan's bluster was deflated by the booming voice and sharp words of Wen Tianxiang. The Yuan commanders present in the meeting were visibly disconcerted.

After the meeting Boyan gave orders to send the other envoys back to Lin'an to consult Empress Dowager Xie while keeping Wen Tianxiang in the Yuan camp. Realizing the sinister intent behind this arrangement, Wen Tianxiang protested to Boyan. Boyan said, feigning unconcern, "Don't be so upset. We need you here to negotiate the peace treaty."

Wu Jian and Jia Yuqing returned to Lin'an to brief Empress Dowager Xie on Wen Tianxiang's refusal to surrender. Eager to surrender, Empress Dowager Xie appointed Jia Yuqing to replace Wen Tianxiang as Chief Minister, and to carry the surrender offer to the Yuan camp. After receiving the surrender offer, Boyan invited Wen Tianxiang to his tent, and told him the Song

他朝廷已另外派人来投降。文天祥气得把贾余庆痛骂一顿，但是投降的事已无法挽回了。

公元1276年，伯颜带兵占领临安。谢太后和赵昀出宫投降，元军把赵昀当作俘虏押送大都（今北京市），文天祥也被押到大都去。一路上，他一直在考虑怎样从敌人手里逃脱。路过镇江的时候，他和几个随从人员商量好，瞅元军没防备，逃出了元营，乘小船到了真州。

真州的守将苗再成听到文丞相到来，十分高兴，打开城门迎接。苗再成从文天祥那里知道临安已经陷落，表示愿意跟文天祥一起，集合淮河东西的兵力，打退元兵。

文天祥正在高兴，哪儿知道守扬州的宋军主帅李庭芝听信谣言，以为文天祥已经投降，是元军派到真州去的内奸，命令苗再成把他杀死。苗再成不相信文天祥是这样的人，但是又不敢违抗李庭芝的命令，只好把文天祥骗出真州城外，把扬州的来文给他看了，叫文天祥赶快离开。

court had sent another envoy with a surrender offer. Wen Tianxiang gave Jia Yuqing a severe chiding, but the surrender was a foregone conclusion.

In 1276 AD, Boyan took control of Lin'an with his army. Empress Dowager Xie and Zhao Xian went out of the palace to formally surrender to the Yuan. Zhao Xian departed for Dadu (modern-day Beijing) as a prisoner, as did Wen Tianxiang. Escape was constantly on his mind as the convoy made its way toward Dadu. When the convoy arrived near Zhenjiang, he and a few followers broke free from the Yuan camp in a moment of lax surveillance, and fled to Zhenzhou on a small boat.

Miao Zaicheng, the commander defending Zhenzhou, was delighted by Wen Tianxiang's arrival and opened the city gate to welcome his party. When Miao Zaicheng learned from Wen Tianxiang that Lin'an had fallen, he expressed his readiness to join Wen Tianxiang in regrouping the forces east and west of the Huai River to repel the Yuan invaders.

Wen Tianxiang was excited by this development, but in the meantime Li Tingzhi, the Song general defending Yangzhou, was led by rumor to believe Wen Tianxiang had surrendered to the Yuan and was a spy sent by the Yuan army to Zhenzhou. He ordered Miao Zaicheng to execute Wen Tianxiang. Miao Zaicheng did not believe the damaging story about Wen Tianxiang. However, on the other hand he could not very well disobey the orders of his superior Li Tingzhi. He lured Wen Tianxiang out of Zhenzhou, and asked him to leave as soon as possible after showing him the order from Yangzhou.

文天祥没办法，又带着随从连夜赶到扬州。第二天天没亮，到了扬州城下，等候开门进城。城门边一些等着进城的人坐着没事都在闲谈。文天祥一听，知道扬州正在悬赏缉拿他，不能进城了。

文天祥等十二个人为了免得被缉拿，改名换姓，化了装，专拣僻静的小路走，想往东到海边去，找船向南转移。

十几个人走了一程，正遇到一队元朝的骑兵赶了上来。他们躲进一座土围子里，幸亏没被元兵发现。

文天祥等日行夜宿，历尽千难万险，终于在农民的帮助下，从海口乘船到了温州。在那儿，他得到张世杰和陈宜中在福州拥立新皇帝即位的消息，就决定到福州去。

Wen Tianxiang had no alternative but to take his followers with him to Yangzhou overnight. The party reached one of the gates of Yangzhou before daybreak the next day and waited for the gate to open. Wen Tianxiang learned from the conversation among other people waiting for the gate to open that a reward was offered in Yangzhou for his arrest. This meant Yangzhou was out of the question for them.

Wen Tianxiang's party of twelve changed their names and assumed disguises to escape detection and arrest. They traveled east on relatively deserted roads in an attempt to get to the sea and find a boat to take them south. They ran into a Yuan cavalry detachment on their journey and hid behind an earthwork. Traveling by day and resting by night through many difficult circumstances, Wen Tianxiang's party finally were able to obtain help from some peasants, and get on a boat that took them to Wenzhou. There, he learned that Zhang Shijie and Chen Yizhong had set up a new emperor in Fuzhou, so he decided to go there.

25、张世杰死守厝山

张世杰、陈宜中怎么会到福州去的呢？原来，在临安被元兵占领，小皇帝赵焜被俘虏到大都去后，赵焜的两个哥哥，九岁的赵昀（音shǐ）和六岁的赵昺（音bǐng），在南宋皇族和大臣陆秀夫护送下逃到福州。陆秀夫派人找到张世杰、陈宜中，把他们请到福州。三个大臣一商量，决定拥立赵昀即位，继续打起宋朝的旗帜，反抗元朝。

文天祥得到了这个消息，感到有了恢复的希望，马上也赶到福州，在新的朝廷里担任枢密使。他向陈宜中建议，从海路进攻元军，收复两浙地区。但是陈宜中认为这样做太冒险，不同意文天祥的意见。文天祥只好改变主意，到南剑州（今福建南平）建立都督府，招募人马，准备反攻。第二年，文天祥进兵江西，在各地起义军的配合之下，连续打败元军，收复了会昌等许多县城。

25. Zhang Shijie Defends Yashan to the Death

How did Zhang Shijie and Chen Yizhong end up in Fuzhou? After the capture of Lin'an by the Yuan army, and the removal of the child-emperor Zhao Xian as prisoner to Dadu, his two brothers, the 9-year-old Zhao Shi and the 6-year-old Zhao Bing were escorted by royal family members and the minister Lu Xiufu to the safety of Fuzhou. Lu Xiufu then sent for Zhang Shijie and Chen Yizhong. After consultation among the three ministers, it was decided to set up Zhao Xia as the new Emperor to continue the resistance against the Yuan in the name of the Southern Song Dynasty.

After learning of this development, Wen Tianxiang saw a ray of hope for the restoration of the Southern Song Dynasty. He immediately went to Fuzhou, where he became Military Affairs Commissioner in the new government. He proposed to Chen Yizhong the idea of recovering territory in the Jiangsu and Zhejiang area by attacking the Yuan army from the sea, but Chen disagreed with the idea, deeming it too risky.

Wen Tianxiang had to find another way. He established an area command in Nanjianzhou (modern-day Nanping, Fujian Province), where he started recruiting in preparation for a campaign to recover lost territory. The next year, Wen Tianxiang marched his troops into Jiangxi and, with the allied militias, won a string of victories against the Yuan army, taking back Huichang and numerous other county seats.

这时候，另一路元军已经南下攻打福州。宋军节节败退，陈宜中眼看恢复没有希望，就独自乘船逃到海外去了。张世杰和陆秀夫等保护赵昀逃上海船，往广东转移。不幸海上刮起一场飓风，差点把船打翻，年幼的赵昀受了惊，得病死了。

张世杰和陆秀夫在海上又拥立赵昀即位，把水军转移到崖山（今广东新会南，厓音yá）。

元朝大将张弘范向元世祖报告说，如果不迅速扑灭南方的小朝廷，恐怕有更多的宋人响应。元世祖就派张弘范为元帅，李恒为副帅，带领精兵二万人，分水陆两路南下。

张弘范先派兵攻打驻守在潮州的文天祥。文天祥兵少势孤，被迫转移到海丰的一座荒山岭。元军突然赶到，文天祥被俘虏了。

元兵把文天祥送到张弘范大营。张弘范假意殷勤，给文天祥松了绑，把他留在营里，接着，就下命令集中水军开往崖山。

元军到了崖山，张弘范先派人向张世杰劝降。张世杰说：“我知道投降元朝，不但可以活命，而且可以得到富贵。但是，我宁可丢脑袋，决不变节。”

At that time, a Yuan army had marched south to attack Fuzhou, defeating the Song troops in battle after battle. Chen Yizhong gave up hope on restoring the Southern Song Dynasty and fled by the sea. Zhang Shijie and Lu Xiufu, with Zhao Xia in their protection, boarded an ocean-going ship to Guangdong. The ship nearly capsized in a sudden cyclone, and the young Zhao Xia, traumatized by the experience, fell ill and soon died.

Still at sea, Zhang Shijie and Lu Xiufu set up Zhao Bing as the Emperor, and took their naval fleet to Yashan (south of modern-day Xinhui, Guangdong Province).

Zhang Hongfan, a Yuan general, said to Emperor Shizu of Yuan in a briefing, "If the rump Song court in the south is not quickly quashed, it might attract a larger following among the Song people." Emperor Shizu of Yuan sent an elite force of 20,000, with Zhang Hongfan as commander and Li Heng as deputy, south by both land and sea.

Zhang Hongfan first sent a force to attack Chaozhou, which was defended by Wen Tianxiang. Outnumbered, Wen Tianxiang was compelled to retreat to a mountain in Haifeng, where he was surprised by the Yuan army and taken prisoner.

When Yuan soldiers took Wen Tianxiang to the tent of Zhang Hongfan, Zhang Hongfan handled him with kid gloves and feigned solicitude. He ordered Wen Tianxiang untied and let him stay with him in his tent. At the same time, he ordered his naval troops to sail toward Yashan.

When the Yuan troops reached Yashan, Zhang Hongfan sent an emissary to Zhang Shijie urging him to surrender. Zhang Shijie said, "I know that by surrendering to the Yuan army, I can not only be spared my life but will be richly rewarded. But I'd rather

张弘范知道张世杰平日很敬佩文天祥，就要文天祥写信给张世杰招降。文天祥冷笑说：“我自己不能救父母，难道会劝别人背叛父母吗？”

张弘范叫人拿来笔墨，硬逼他写信。文天祥接过笔，毫不犹豫地写下两句诗：

人生自古谁无死，留取丹心照汗青！

（意思是：自古以来，人免不了一死，我要留下赤诚的忠心，照耀千秋。原诗有八句，是文天祥过零丁洋的时候写的。）

兵士把他写的诗句拿给张弘范，张弘范看了只好苦笑。他眼看劝降毫无希望，就只有拼命攻打。

崖山在中国南面海湾里，背山面海，地势险要。张世杰在海上把一千多条战船排成一字阵，用绳索连接起来，船的四周还筑起城楼，决心跟元兵决一死战。元军用小船满载茅草，浇足了油，点着了火，乘着风势向宋军发起火攻。张世杰早防到这一着，在船上涂上厚厚的一层湿泥，还缚了一根根长木头，顶住元军的火船。

die than betray my country."

Zhang Hongfan knew of Zhang Shijie's admiration for Wen Tianxiang, so he Wen Tianxiang to write Zhang Shijie urging him to surrender. Wen Tianxiang said with a snort, "I already deeply regret not being able to help my motherland. Do you expect me to encourage others to betray it?"

Zhang Hongfan had ink and brush brought in and forced him to write a letter. Taking the brush, Wen Tianxiang wrote the following line without pausing to think.

Man is mortal to be sure, a pure heart would longer endure!

This line was part of a poem previously written by Wen Tianxiang when he was travelling on the Lingding Sea.

When a soldier brought the sheet of paper with the line of verse to Zhang Hongfan, he could only smile wryly. Realizing he was not going to get the defending general to surrender, he resumed his strong offensive.

Yashan was strategically situated in a bay in South China, with a mountain overlooking the sea. Zhang Shijie placed more than 1,000 boats next to each other in a straight line, tied together with ropes and surrounded by defensive superstructures. He was digging in for a battle to the death with the Yuan army. The Yuan troops launched a fire attack by sending toward the Song troops small boats loaded with dry straw doused with kerosene and set aflame. The wind was unfavorable to the Song army. Zhang Shijie had been prepared for this: by daubing his ships with a thick coat of wet mud and equipping them with long wooden poles, he was able to keep the fireboats at bay.

张弘范的火攻失败了，就用船队封锁海口，断绝了张世杰通往陆地的交通。宋兵在海上饿了吃干粮，渴了喝海水。海水又咸又苦，兵士们喝了纷纷呕吐。张弘范发动元兵发起猛攻，宋兵誓死抵抗，双方相持不下。

这时候，元军副统帅李恒也从广州到厓山跟张弘范会师。张弘范增加了实力，重新组织力量进攻。他把元军分为四路，围攻宋军。潮落的时候，元军从北面冲击，潮涨的时候，元军又顺着潮水从南面进攻。

宋军两面受敌，正在拼命招架。忽然听到张弘范的坐船奏起音乐来。宋军听了，以为元将正在举行宴会，稍微松懈一下。哪想到这个乐声恰恰是元军总攻的信号。乐声一起，张弘范的坐船发起进攻，箭如雨一样射向宋船。元兵在乱箭掩护下，夺了宋军七条战船。各路元军一起猛攻。从晌午到傍晚，厓山的海上，海潮汹涌，杀声震天。

张世杰正在指挥战斗，忽然看见一条宋船降下了旗，停止

His fire attack having failed, Zhang Hongfan started a blockade with a flotilla, cutting off Zhang Shijie's communication with the shore. The Song troops were reduced to eating rations of dry food and drinking from the sea. The briny, bitter seawater caused vomiting among the soldiers. In the meantime, Zhang Hongfan intensified his offensive. The Song troops fought back valiantly, resulting in a stalemate.

At this time, the deputy commander of the Yuan army, Li Heng, led his troops from Guangzhou to join forces with Zhang Hongfan in Yashan. With reinforcements, Zhang Hongfan renewed his offensive. He attacked the Song army on four fronts, surrounding it. At low tide, the Yuan army attacked from the north; at high tide, it attacked with the incoming tide from the south.

The Song troops were reeling from the two-pronged attacks when they heard music coming from Zhang Hongfan's ship. The Song troops, believing the Yuan general was hosting a banquet, seized the opportunity to get some rest. However, the music turned out to be a signal for an all-out offensive. At the sound of the music Zhang Hongfan's ship led the charge and arrows rained on the Song ships. By unleashing a barrage of arrows, the Yuan troops succeeded in seizing seven Song battleships. All Yuan units were pitched into the fierce offensive. From morning until evening, the sea at Yashan was a scene of billowing waves and ear-splitting battle cries.

Zhang Shijie was directing the battle when he caught sight of a Song ship lowering its flag and ceasing its fighting. As one Song ship after another did the same, Zhang Shijie realized the

抵抗，其他战船也陆续降下了旗。张世杰知道大势已去，急忙一面把精兵集中在中军，一面派人驾驶小船，准备把赵昀接过来，组织突围。

赵昀的坐船，由陆秀夫守着。他对张世杰派去接赵昀的小船，闹不清是真是假，怕小皇帝落在元军手中，就拒绝了使者的要求。他回过头对赵昀说：“国家到了这步田地，陛下也只好以身殉国了。”说着，就背着赵昀一起跳进了大海，在滚滚波涛里淹没了。

张世杰没有接到赵昀，只好指挥战船，趁着夜色朦胧，突围撤退到海陵山。他点了一下战船，一千条战船只剩下十几条。这时候，海上又刮起了飓风，有人劝张世杰登岸避风。张世杰坚持不肯上岸。一阵巨浪袭来，把他的船打沉了。这位誓死抵抗的宋将终于落水牺牲。

公元1279年二月，元朝统一了中国，南宋宣告灭亡。

battle was over. He immediately deployed his best troops to the center, and sent a small boat to fetch Zhao Bing in preparation for an attempt to run the blockade.

Lu Xiufu protected Zhao Bing's ship. Unsure about the true intentions of the people coming to transfer Zhao Bing to a small boat, and worried that the young Emperor might fall into the hands of the Yuan army, Lu Xiufu refused the demand of the envoy. He said over his shoulder to Zhao Bing, "There's no hope now for our country. His Majesty has no alternative but to die for the country." With that, he jumped with Zhao Bing on his back into the sea, and both were swallowed by the crashing waves.

Zhang Shijie had to leave without Zhao Bing. He led his fleet of battleships under cover of night to the Hailing Mountain, successfully getting through the blockade. When he counted his ships again, only a dozen were left out of 1,000. A cyclone then approached. His followers urged him to seek shelter on the shore, but Zhang Shijie adamantly refused, and a tail wave capsized his ship. The Song general, who had vowed to fight to the death, drowned.

In February 1279 AD, the Yuan Dynasty unified China, and the Southern Song Dynasty was extinguished.

26、正气歌

元军攻下厓山以后，张弘范召集将领，举行庆功宴会，把文天祥请来。宴会席上，张弘范对文天祥说：“现在宋朝灭亡，丞相已经尽到最后一片忠心。只要您回心转意，归顺我们大元皇上，还能保持您丞相的地位。”

文天祥含着眼泪说：“国破家亡，我身为宋朝大臣，没能够挽回局势，死了还有罪孽，怎么还能贪图活命呢。”

张弘范一再劝降，没有结果，只好派人把文天祥押送到大都。

过了半年，文天祥被押到大都，元王朝下令把他送到上等的宾馆里，用美酒好菜招待他。过了几天，元朝丞相博罗派投降官员留梦炎去劝降。文天祥对这个叛徒早已深恶痛绝，现在见他居然老着脸皮来劝降，更是火冒三丈。没等留梦炎开口，就一顿痛骂，把留梦炎骂得抬不起头，灰溜溜地走了。

元朝对文天祥劝降不成，就把他移送到兵马司衙门，戴上

26. Ode to the Force of Virtue

After taking control of Yashan, Zhang Hongfan summoned the Yuan commanders to a victory feast, where Wen Tianxiang was also an invited guest. Zhang Hongfan said to Wen Tianxiang at the banquet, "Now that the Song Dynasty has been extinguished, you can say you've done your patriotic best as Chief Minister. If you change your mind and submit to the Yuan Emperor, you can continue to be Chief Minister."

Wen Tianxiang said, with tears in his eyes, "Now that my country is no more, I feel guilt-laden for not having been able to prevent its destruction. Even my death won't begin to redeem my guilt. How can I prolong my existence in ignominy?"

Unable to persuade Wen Tianxiang to surrender, Zhang Hongfan ordered him taken to Dadu. Six months later, Wen Tianxiang arrived in Dadu, where the Yuan court ordered that he be accommodated in the best guesthouse and given the best wine and food. A few days later, the Yuan Chief Minister Boluo sent Liu Mengyan, a Song official who had defected, to try to talk Wen Tianxiang into surrendering. Wen Tianxiang, who had long detested and despised this traitor, was infuriated by his attempt to wangle an agreement to surrender out of him. Before Liu Mengyan opened his mouth, Wen Tianxiang gave him such a chiding that the humbled Liu Mengyan left in shame.

Unsuccessful in its attempts to make Wen Tianxiang surrender, the Yuan government transferred him to the Warden's Office, where he became a prison inmate in handcuffs and leg

脚镣手铐，过着囚徒的生活。过了一个月，博罗把文天祥提到元朝的枢密院，亲自审问。

文天祥被兵士押着，来到枢密院大堂，只见博罗满脸凶相，坐在上面。文天祥正眼也不看，昂起头，挺直腰杆走上前去。左右兵士吆喝他跪下，被文天祥拒绝了。

博罗恼羞成怒，喝令左右动手。兵士们把文天祥拉的拉，推的推，将文天祥按倒在地上。

博罗说：“你还有什么话可说？”

文天祥坦然说：“从古以来，国家有兴有亡，做大臣的被灭被杀的，哪一个朝代没有？我是宋朝的臣子，现在既然已经失败，只求早死。”

博罗怕审问出现僵局，想缓和一下空气，就说：“自从盘古到现在，有几个帝王，你倒说来听听。”

文天祥哼了一声，说：“一部十七史（指《史记》等十七部历史书），从哪里说起？我今天不是到这里来应考，哪有心思跟你们闲扯。”

博罗被文天祥抢白几句，讨个没趣，就无理取闹地责问文天祥为什么丢了临安逃走，为什么要另立二王（指赵昀、赵昀）。文天祥一条条据理驳斥，最后，他慷慨激昂地说：“我文天祥今天落在你的手里，早就准备一死，何必再噜苏！”

博罗气得吹胡子瞪眼睛，喝令把文天祥押回兵马司。他想

irons. A month later, Boluo had Wen Tianxiang brought to the Bureau of Military Affairs, where he personally conducted a trial.

Wen Tianxiang, flanked by guards, arrived in the hall of the Bureau of Military Affairs, where a glaring, mean-looking Boluo was already installed in his seat. Wen Tianxiang walked up with his back ramrod straight and his head held high, not deigning to cast a glance at the presiding judge. The soldiers yelled at him to kneel, but Wen Tianxiang refused.

Boluo was infuriated by this irreverence, and ordered the soldiers to make him kneel. By dragging and pushing, the soldiers pushed Wen Tianxiang to the ground.

Boluo said, "Now what do you have to say?"

Wen Tianxiang said calmly, "Countries rise and fall. Government officials are executed. This is in the nature of things. I am an official of a defeated country. All I want is to be killed as quickly as possible."

Not wanting the interrogation to bog down in confrontation, Boluo tried to inject a light note into the proceedings. "Tell me how many emperors there are from Pan Gu until now."

Wen Tianxiang said with a snort, "They fill seventeen tomes of historical chronicles, too many to count. Besides, I am not here to take an examination, and I am in no mood to engage in small talk with you."

Hurt by the brush-off, Boluo confronted Wen Tianxiang out of spite. "Why did you desert Lin'an? Why did you go along with the enthronement of Zhao Xia and Zhao Bing?" After rebutting him point by point, Wen Tianxiang concluded spiritedly. "Since I am in your hands, I'm prepared to die. There's no need to waste words."

Boluo was furious. He ordered Wen Tianxiang remanded to

杀掉文天祥。但是元世祖恐怕杀了文天祥，民心不服，不同意把他杀害。

文天祥被关的那间土牢，又矮又窄，阴暗潮湿。遇到雨天，屋面漏水，淌地是水；一到夏天，地面上发出一阵阵蒸汽，更加闷热。牢房的隔壁，有狱卒的炉灶，有陈年的谷仓，发出阵阵烟火气、霉气，再加上厕所里大粪的气味，死老鼠的臭味，使人极其难受。

文天祥被关在这间牢房里，恶劣的环境只能折磨他的身体，却并不能摧毁他的意志。他相信，只要有爱国爱民族的浩然正气，就能够战胜一切恶劣的环境。

他在牢房中，写下了千古传诵的《正气歌》。他在那首诗里，举了历史上一些坚持正义、不怕牺牲的忠臣义士的例子，认为这都是正气的表现。他在诗中写道：

天地有正气，杂然赋流形。

下则为河岳，上则为日星。

于人曰浩然，沛然塞苍冥。

……

时穷节乃见，一一垂丹青。

（意思是：天地之间有一种正气，分别表现为各种物体，如地上的大河高山，天空的日月星辰。在人的身上就表现为浩然之气，充塞在宇宙之间。……到了危急的关头，才表现出他的气节，他们的事迹一件件留在史册上。）

the Bureau of Military Affairs, with the intention of having him killed. However, Emperor Shizu of Yuan did not give his consent, for fear that killing Wen Tianxiang would prove unpopular.

Wen Tianxiang was incarcerated in a dark, damp dungeon with a low ceiling and cramped space. When it rained, the cell would get flooded. In summer, the dampness rising up from the earthen floor made the air close and uncomfortably warm. The warden's stove and stale grain stored next door gave out smoke and a moldy smell, and the air was made more unbearable by the odor from the latrine and the stink of dead rats.

The harsh conditions of his cell made him physically weaker, but were powerless against his mental fortitude. He firmly believed that his love of the people and the country was a virtuous force that would enable him to endure any harsh conditions.

In his cell, he wrote the legendary *Zheng Qi Ge* ("Ode to the Force of Virtue"), a poem that is popular even today. In the poem, he cited examples from history of justice-upholding and death-defying heroes, who represented in his view the force of virtue. The main idea of the poem is as follows:

A force of virtue permeates Heaven and Earth.
It is embodied in all physical forms:
The rivers and mountains on Earth,
The sun and stars in Heaven.
In man, it manifests itself as a boundless spirit
So vast it fills the universe ...
True strength of character is revealed
Only in times of crisis and peril.
They are remembered by history.

文天祥进牢的第三年，河北中山府发生了一场农民起义。起义领袖自称是宋朝皇室的后代，聚集几千人马，号召大家打进大都，救出文丞相。

这一来可把元王朝吓坏了，如果不杀文天祥，恐怕闹出大乱子来。元世祖还没有丢掉招降的幻想，决定亲自动降文天祥。

一天，文天祥被人从牢房里押出来，带到宫里。

文天祥见了元世祖，不肯下跪，只作了个揖。元世祖问他还有什么话说。文天祥说：“我是大宋宰相，竭尽全力扶助朝廷，可惜奸臣卖国，叫我英雄无用武之地。我不能恢复国土，反落得被俘受辱。我死了以后，也不甘心。”说着，咬牙切齿、不断地捶打自己的胸膛。

元世祖和颜悦色地劝说：“你的忠心，我也完全了解。事到如今，你如果能改变主意，做元朝的臣子，我仍旧让你当丞相怎么样？”

文天祥慷慨地说：“我是宋朝的宰相，哪有服侍两朝的道理。我不死，哪还有脸去见地下的忠臣烈士？”

In the third year of Wen Tianxiang's incarceration, a peasant uprising broke out in Zhongshan of Hebei. The rebel leader claimed to be a descendant of the royal Song family. He put together an army of several thousand men, and called for a march toward Dadu to rescue Chief Minister Wen Tianxiang. This development frightened the Yuan government. It now feared dire consequences if Wen Tianxiang was kept alive. However, Emperor Shizu of Yuan had not given up the idea of turning Wen Tianxiang, and decided to give it a try himself. Wen Tianxiang was taken from his cell to the palace.

When he was brought before Emperor Shizu of Yuan, Wen Tianxiang refused to kneel, but only made a bow with his hands folded. Emperor Shizong asked him what he had to say. Wen Tianxiang replied, "As Chief Minister of the Song, I gave my best advice to my government. But the traitorous acts of some ministers prevented me from making a difference. I have been unable to recover lost territory, and have fallen into humiliating captivity. I will not die with peace of mind." He gritted his teeth and kept beating on his chest as he said this.

Emperor Shizu said affably and in a cajoling tone, "I can fully understand your loyalty and patriotism. But given the new reality, if you can change your mind and join the Yuan government, I will keep you on as Chief Minister. What do you think?"

Wen Tianxiang replied in a passionate voice, "I am Chief Minister of the Song government. There is no way I am going to serve two governments. Only by dying now would I feel comfortable in the company of the patriots and heroes who died before me."

元世祖说：“你不愿做丞相，做个枢密使怎么样？”

文天祥斩钉截铁地回答说：“我只求一死，别的没有什么可说了。”

元世祖知道劝降已没有希望，才叫侍从把文天祥带出去。第二天，就下令把文天祥处死。

这一天，北风怒号，阴云密布。京城柴市的刑场上，戒备森严。市民们听到文天祥将要就义的消息，自发集中到柴市来，一下子就聚集了一万人，把刑场团团围住。只见文天祥戴着镣铐，神色从容，来到刑场。他问旁边的百姓，哪一面是南方，百姓们指给文天祥看了。他朝着正南方拜了几拜，端端正正坐了下来，对监斩官说：“我的事结束了。”

公元1283年一月，这位四十七岁的民族英雄终于牺牲，在民族危亡的时刻，他表现了一身的浩然正气。

Emperor Shizu said, "If you don't want to be Chief Minister, would you agree to be Military Affairs Commissioner?"

Wen Tianxiang answered directly, "All I want now is to die. I have no more to say."

Emperor Shizu knew then that he would never get Wen Tianxiang to surrender. He ordered Wen taken away. The next day, Wen Tianxiang was executed.

It was a day of a howling north wind and an overcast sky. Ten thousand inhabitants of the city flocked spontaneously to the heavily guarded Chaishi execution ground in the capital when they learned that Wen Tianxiang was going to his death that day. The crowd, several deep around the perimeter, saw a calm Wen Tianxiang arrive at the execution ground in handcuffs and leg irons. He asked the civilians closest to him which way was south. The people pointed it out to Wen Tianxiang, who made several bows in that direction. Sitting down with a straight back, he said to the official supervising the execution, "I'm ready."

In January 1283 AD, this national hero of China finally went to his death at the age of 47, embodying the boundless spirit of the force of virtue.

27、欧洲来客马可·波罗

元世祖在位的时候，成吉思汗时期开始建立的庞大的蒙古汗国，已经分裂成四个汗国（钦察汗国、察合台汗国、窝阔台汗国、伊尔汗国），元朝皇帝在名义上还是四个汗国的大汗。在那个时期，中国是世界上最强大最富庶的国家，西方各国的使者、商人、旅行家纷纷慕名到中国来观光。其中最有名的要数马可·波罗。

马可·波罗的父亲尼古拉·波罗和叔父玛飞·波罗，原来是威尼斯的商人。兄弟俩常常到国外去做生意。蒙古汗国建立以后，他们带了大批珍宝，到钦察汗国做生意。后来，那儿发生战争，他们又到了中亚细亚的一座城市——布哈拉，在那儿住了下来。

有一次，忽必烈的使者经过布哈拉，见到这两个欧洲商人，感到很新奇，对他们说：“咱们大汗没见过欧洲人，你们如果能够跟我一起去见大汗，保能得到富贵，再说，跟我们一起到中国去，再安全也没有了。”

尼古拉兄弟本来是喜欢到处游历的人，听说能见到中国的大汗，怎么不愿意？两人就跟随使者一起到了上都（今内蒙古

27. Marco Polo, a Visitor from Europe

During the reign of Emperor Shizu of Yuan, the vast Mongol khanate founded by Genghis Khan was split into four divisions, with the Yuan Emperor nominally still the Great Khan ruling all four khanates. In that period, China was the most powerful and richest nation in the world, a strong magnet attracting many legations, merchants and travelers who flocked there to visit the land of fabled riches. One of the most famous of them is Marco Polo.

Marco Polo's father Niccolò and uncle Maffeo were merchants from Venice. The two Polo brothers made frequent business trips abroad. After the founding of the Mongol Khanate, they traveled to the Kipchak Khanate with a load of treasures they intended to sell. When war broke out there, they moved to Bukhara, a city in Central Asia, and settled down there.

An envoy sent by Kublai happened to see these two European merchants as he passed through Bukhara. His curiosity piqued, he said to them, "My Great Khan has never seen a European. If you agree to come with me to see my Great Khan, you will make a fortune. Besides, no one else can provide the kind of security that we can give you on your journey to China."

The Polo brothers were travel enthusiasts. When they heard that the Great Khan of China could receive them, they immediately grabbed the chance. The two men followed the envoy to Shangdu (northwest of modern-day Duolun County, the

自治区多伦县西北)。忽必烈听到来了两个欧洲客人，果然十分高兴，在他的行宫里接见了他们，问这问那，特别热情。

尼古拉兄弟没准备留在中国，忽必烈从他们那儿听到欧洲的情况，要他们回欧洲跟罗马教皇捎个信，请教皇派人来传教。两人就告别了忽必烈，离开中国。在路上走了三年多，才回到威尼斯。那时候，尼古拉的妻子已经病死，留下的孩子马可·波罗，已经是十五岁的少年了。

马可·波罗听父亲和叔父说起中国的繁华情况，十分羡慕，央求父亲带他到中国去。尼古拉觉得让孩子一个人留在家里不放心，就决定带他一起走。

尼古拉兄弟见了教皇之后，带着马可·波罗到中国来。路上又花了三年多，在公元1275年到了中国。忽必烈已经即位称帝，听尼古拉兄弟来了，派人从很远的地方把他们迎接到上都。

尼古拉兄弟带着马可·波罗进宫拜见元世祖。元世祖一看尼古拉身边多了一个少年，诧异地问这是谁，尼古拉回答说：“这是我的孩子，也是陛下的仆人。”

元世祖见到马可·波罗英俊的样子，连声说：“你来得太好了。”

当天晚上，元世祖特地在皇宫里举行宴会，欢迎他们。后来，又留他们在朝廷里办事。

Autonomous Region of Inner Mongolia). Kublai, as predicted, was happy to see the Europeans. He warmly received them in his traveling palace and asked many questions.

The Polo brothers did not intend to stay in China. Kublai, after hearing about Europe from them, asked them to return to Europe with a letter from Kublai to the Pope, asking him to send missionaries to China. The two men took leave of Kublai and left China. They traveled for more than three years before they arrived back in Venice. By that time Niccolò's wife had died of illness, leaving a son Marco Polo, who was a young man of 15.

After hearing the accounts of his father and his uncle about the riches of China, Marco Polo was captivated and begged his father to take him to China. Niccolò also felt uncomfortable about leaving his son behind with no one to take care of him, so he decided to take him along.

After an audience with the pope, Niccolò set out with Marco Polo for China. It was another three years on the road before they arrived in China, in 1275 AD. When Kublai, who had by that time become Emperor, heard about the arrival of the Polos, he sent a welcoming party to meet them when they were still a long way from Shangdu.

The Polo brothers took Marco Polo with them to the audience with Emperor Shizu of Yuan. The latter was surprised at the sight of a young man accompanying them and asked who he was. Niccolò replied, "My son at your service."

The handsome Marco Polo impressed Emperor Shizu. He said with enthusiasm, "Welcome, welcome!"

That evening Emperor Shizu invited them to a welcoming banquet in his palace. They were later asked to serve in the government.

马可·波罗非常聪明，很快学会了蒙古语和汉语。元世祖发现他进步很快，十分赏识他，没有多久，就派他到云南去办事。元世祖喜欢了解各地风俗人情，过去，朝廷使者到各地去视察，回来的时候，问他们风俗人情，都讲不出。马可·波罗出去，每到一处，都留心考察风俗人情。回到大都，就向元世祖详细汇报。元世祖听了，直夸马可·波罗能干。以后，凡是有重要的任务，元世祖总派马可·波罗去。

马可·波罗在中国整整住了十七年，被元世祖派到许多地方视察，还经常出使到国外，到过南洋好几个国家。他在扬州呆过三年，据说还在那里当过总管。

日子一久，三个欧洲人不免想念家乡，三番五次向元世祖请求回国。但是元世祖宠着马可·波罗，舍不得让他们走。恰好那时候，伊利汗国国王的一个妃子死了，派使者到大都来求亲。元世祖选了一个名叫阔阔真的皇族少女，赐给伊利汗国国王做王妃。伊利汗国使者认为走陆路太不方便，知道尼古拉他们熟悉海路，就请元世祖派尼古拉他们一起护送王妃去伊利汗国。元世祖只好答应。

Marco Polo was a smart young man, and was able to quickly pick up Mongolian and Han Chinese. Impressed by his rapid progress, Emperor Shizu soon sent Marco Polo to Yunnan on official business. Emperor Shizu was intrigued by different customs and ways of life in various parts of his dominion. In the past, officials sent on inspection tours to various parts of China would often be unable to answer Emperor Shizu's questions about local customs and culture. Marco Polo in contrast would pay close attention to local culture and make detailed reports to Emperor Shizu on his return from the missions. Emperor Shizu was full of praise for Marco Polo's abilities, and frequently entrusted important missions to him.

In his seventeen years in China, Emperor Shizu sent Marco Polo on inspection tours to many locations in China and as diplomatic envoy abroad. He went to several countries in Southeast Asia as a diplomat. He stayed for three years in Yangzhou, where he is said to have been appointed Supervisor-in-Chief.

As time went on, the three Europeans became homesick and repeatedly petitioned Emperor Shizu to be allowed to go home. However, because of Marco Polo's importance to him, Emperor Shizu was reluctant to let them go. It so happened that a concubine of the Khan of the Il Khanate had died, and he sent an envoy to Dadu to find a bride. Emperor Shizu selected a young lady called Kuokuozhen from the royal family as concubine for the Il Khan. The envoy from the Il Khan felt that travel by land was too arduous, and, knowing the Polo brothers' experience in sea travel, requested Emperor Shizu to ask the Polos to escort the concubine to the Il Khanate by sea. Emperor Shizu had no reason to refuse.

公元1292年，尼古拉兄弟和马可·波罗就和伊尔汗国使者一起，离开中国乘海船经过印度洋，把阔阔真护送到了伊尔汗国，经过三年的跋涉，才回到威尼斯。

这时候，他们离开威尼斯已经二十年。当地人长久没听到他们的消息，都以为他们死在国外了。现在看到他们穿着东方的服装回来，又听说他们到过中国，带回许多珍珠宝石，都轰动了。人们给马可·波罗起个外号，叫做“百万家产的马可”。

没有多久，威尼斯和另一个城邦热那亚发生冲突，双方的舰队在地中海里打起仗来。马可·波罗自己花钱买了一条战船，亲自驾驶，参加威尼斯的舰队。结果，威尼斯打了败仗，马可·波罗被俘，关在热那亚的监牢里。热那亚人听说他是个著名的旅行家，纷纷到牢监里来访问，请他讲东方和中国的情况。

In 1292 AD, the Polos left China with the Il Khan envoy, and sailed across the Indian Ocean, escorting Kuokuozhen safely to the Il Khanate. They continued on, and after another three years of travel, finally arrived back in Venice.

By that time, they had been absent from Venice for twenty years. The local people thought they had died abroad because they had not heard from or about them for all those long years. Now that they came back in oriental outfits and reportedly brought loads of pearls and other precious stones from China, excitement rippled through the city. Marco Polo was given the nickname of Marco Millioni, or Marco of the Million.

Shortly afterwards, a conflict arose between Venice and the city-state of Genoa, and naval battles were fought between their fleets on the Mediterranean. Marco Polo obtained a battleship at his own expense and joined the Venetian fleet, with himself at the wheel of the ship. When Venice lost the battle, Marco Polo was captured and put in a jail in Genoa. The Genoans flocked to the prison to ask the famous world traveler to talk about the Orient and China.

跟马可·波罗一起关在监牢里有一个名叫鲁思梯谦的作家，把马可·波罗讲述的事都记录下来，编成一本书，这就是著名的《马可·波罗行纪》（一名《东方闻见录》）。在那本游记里，马可·波罗把中国的著名城市，像大都、扬州、苏州、杭州等，都作了详细的介绍，称颂中国的富庶和文明。这本书一出版，激起了欧洲人对中国文明的向往。热那亚人因为马可·波罗出了名，把他释放回国。

打那以后，中国和欧洲人、阿拉伯人之间的往来更加密切。阿拉伯的天文学、数学、医学知识开始传到中国来，中国古代的三大发明——指南针、印刷术、火药，也在这个时期传到了欧洲（中国的另一大发明造纸术，传到欧洲要更早一些）。

A fellow inmate in the Genoan cell, by the name of Rustician, wrote down the oral accounts of Marco Polo, which were collected in the famous *Travels of Marco Polo*. In the book, Marco Polo gave detailed descriptions of famous Chinese cities like Dadu, Yangzhou, Suzhou and Hangzhou, and glowing accounts of the prosperity and civilization of China. Its publication stoked the fascination of Europe with Chinese civilization. With Marco Polo's fame growing, the Genoans freed him to go back to his country.

An era of increased exchanges and contacts between the Chinese, the Europeans and the Arabs was ushered in. The Arabs' knowledge of astronomy, mathematics and medicine began to spread to China. Three Chinese inventions the compass, the printing press and gunpowder were imported into Europe During this period (another of China's inventions, paper, having already spread to Europe at an earlier time).

28、《窦娥冤》感天动地

由于元世祖采取了许多发展生产的措施，元朝初期的社会经济十分繁荣。但是这种繁荣只使蒙古的王公贵族和地主官僚得到好处。为了满足蒙古贵族过穷奢极欲的生活和军事的需要，元世祖还任用了一批管理财政的大臣，帮助他搜刮财富。这批大臣勾结地方官吏，贪赃枉法，无所不为。

元王朝还实行民族压迫政策，把全国人民划分为四个等级：第一等是蒙古人；第二等叫色目人，也就是西域各族和西夏人；第三等叫汉人，就是原来在金朝统治下的汉人、契丹、女真等族人，第四等叫南人，就是原来在南宋地区的各族人民。四个等级的人政治地位和待遇不同，汉人和南人受到百般歧视。

在残酷的阶级压迫和民族压迫下，各族劳动人民都过着悲惨的日子。贪污横行，冤案多得数也数不清。

元世祖死后，他的孙子铁穆耳即位，就是元成宗。元成宗

28. *Dou E's Grievance Moves Heaven and Earth*

Emperor Shizu of Yuan introduced numerous incentives to promote production, contributing to an increased prosperity in the early years of his reign. However, the economic boom exclusively benefited the aristocratic class, landowners and officials. To meet the Mongol aristocrats need for an extravagant lifestyle and to support the military, Emperor Shizu recruited ministers specializing in finance to help him fill his coffers by plundering the people. These ministers ganged up with local officials in illegal schemes of bribery and profiteering.

The Yuan government pursued an ethnic policy that divided its subjects into four classes. The first class consisted of the Mongols; the second, called the Semuren, consisted of people from the Western Regions and the Western Xia; the third, called the Han, consisted of the Han Chinese, the Kitans and the Jurchens, who had lived under the Jin rule; and, the fourth, called the Nanren (southern people), consisted of the ethnic communities who had lived under the rule of the Southern Song. Each of the four classes possessed a distinct political status and was treated accordingly, with the Han and the Nanren heavily discriminated against. In this system of oppression and ethnic discrimination, the working people lived a miserable life. Corruption was endemic and injustices were rampant.

Emperor Shizu of Yuan was succeeded by his grandson Temur

时期，这种贪赃枉法的情况越来越严重。有一次，查出有贪污行为的官吏一万八千多人，冤案五千多件。

当时，在大都流行着一种戏剧，叫杂剧。一些有正义感的读书人，不满官府的黑暗统治，利用杂剧的形式来揭露官场的罪恶和社会的不平现象。

大都有个读书人叫关汉卿，从小喜爱音乐戏剧，会吹箫弹琴，还会唱歌跳舞。关汉卿在京城太医院当过官，可是他对医术不感兴趣，对编写剧本却特别热心。那时候，演戏的人社会地位很低，关汉卿却跟他们混得挺熟，有时候他自己也上场演出，扮个角色。因为他对音乐戏剧很有研究，所以编出的戏也就格外精彩。

在大都，一班贵族和普通百姓都喜欢看戏，关汉卿编的戏剧不是为了光给贵族消闲作乐，而是常常帮百姓说话。他把看到的，听到的人民的悲惨遭遇，写进他的剧本里。《感天动地窦娥冤》（也叫《窦娥冤》），就是他的杰出的代表作品。

《窦娥冤》的主要人物是楚州地方一个贫苦女子窦娥。窦娥从小死了母亲，她父亲窦天章还不起债，又因为上京赶考，缺

as Emperor Chengzong of the Yuan Dynasty. During the reign of Emperor Chengzong, corruption and injustices became even more unwieldy. In one investigation, 18,000 officials were ferreted out as having been implicated in graft, and 5,000 cases injustice were discovered.

A theatrical genre called *zaju* (a form of poetic drama set to music) became popular in Dadu. Intellectuals disaffected with the benighted policies of the government resorted to the vehicle of *zaju* to lampoon official corruption, ineptitude and social inequity.

One such intellectual in Dadu called Guan Hanqin displayed an affinity for music and theater at a very young age. He mastered the *xiao* (a bamboo flute) and the zither, as well as singing and dancing. Although he had been an official doctor at the Imperial Clinic in the capital, his heart was not in medicine. Instead, he had a passion for playwriting. In those days, actors had a low social standing, but Guan Hanqin frequented their circles. Sometimes he would perform a role in one of their theatrical numbers. Because of his expertise in both music and theater, his creations were often possessed of an unusual charm and interest.

Theater-going was popular among both the aristocracy and the ordinary people in Dadu. Guan Hanqin's plays were not purely fare to amuse the aristocrats, but were often vehicles for putting across the common people's message. The miseries of the people that he witnessed or heard about were incorporated into his plays. One of his signature works was *Dou E's Grievance Moves the Gods* (also known as *Dou E's Grievance*).

The main protagonist in *Dou E's Grievance* is an impoverished woman called Dou E from Chuzhou. Her mother died when she

少盘费，把她卖给孤苦的蔡婆婆家做童养媳。到蔡家没两年，丈夫就害病死了，只剩了寡媳和她婆婆两人相依为命地过日子。

楚州有个流氓叫张驴儿，欺负蔡家婆婆无依无靠，跟他又亲张老儿一起，霸在蔡家，逼迫蔡婆婆嫁给他张老儿。蔡婆婆软弱怕事，勉强答应了，张驴儿又胁迫寡媳跟他成亲，寡媳坚决拒绝，还把张驴儿痛骂了一顿。

张驴儿怀恨在心。过几天，蔡婆婆害病，要寡媳做羊肚汤给她吃。张驴儿偷偷地在汤里下了毒药，想先毒死蔡婆婆，再逼寡媳成亲。寡媳把羊肚汤端给蔡婆婆喝，蔡婆婆接过碗，忽然要呕吐，不想喝，让给张老儿喝了，张老儿中了毒，在地上翻滚了几下，就咽了气。

张驴儿毒死了自己父亲，把杀人的罪名，栽到窦娥身上，告到楚州衙门。

楚州知府桃机(wá)是个贪赃枉法的贪官，背地里被张驴儿用钱买通了，把窦娥抓到公堂讯问，逼她招认是她下的毒。窦娥受尽了百般拷打，痛得死去活来，还是不肯承认。

桃机知道窦娥待她婆婆很孝顺，就当着她婆婆的面拷打蔡婆

was a child. Her father, Dou Tianzhang, sold her to an Auntie Cai as child bride for a sum of money so that he could travel to the capital to take part in the Civil Service exam. Less than two years after her marriage into the Cai family, her husband died of illness leaving her to live alone with the widowed Auntie Cai, who was also poor.

A hooligan in Chuzhou called Donkey Zhang, and his father, Oldman Zhang, emboldened by the fact that Dou E and Auntie Cai had no one to protect them, refused to leave the women's house unless Auntie Cai agreed to marry Oldman Zhang. After the timid Auntie Cai gave her reluctant consent, Donkey Zhang tried to coerce Dou E into marrying him, but she flatly refused and scolded him.

Donkey Zhang remembered the slight. A few days later, Auntie Cai fell ill and asked Dou E to make some mutton tripe soup for her. Donkey Zhang slipped some poison into the soup in order to kill Auntie Cai, and force Dou E to marry him. When Auntie Cai took the soup from Dou E and was about to drink it, she suddenly felt nauseous and handed the bowl of soup to Oldman Zhang, who drank it instead. Oldman Zhang fell down and died.

Donkey Zhang, whose poison killed his own father, now blamed the murder on Dou E, and denounced her to the Chuzhou government.

Tao Wu, the governor of Chuzhou, was a corrupt official. Having had his palm greased by Donkey Zhang, he had Dou E arrested and brought before him. He tried to force a confession out of her. Despite being severely tortured, Dou E still refused to admit to administering the poison.

Tao Wu found out that Dou E was a dutiful daughter-in-law.

婆。窦娥想到婆婆年纪老，受不起这个酷刑，只好含冤招了供。

贪官桃机把窦娥屈打成招，定了死罪，把她押到刑场去处死。窦娥眼看没有伸冤的地方，她满腔悲愤地咒骂天地：“地也，你不分好歹何为地？天也，你错勘贤愚枉为天！”在临刑的时候，她又向天发出三桩誓愿：一要刀过头落，一腔热血全溅在白练上，二要天降大雪，遮盖她的尸体，三要让楚州大旱三年。窦娥的誓愿居然感动了天地。那时候，正是六月大伏天气，窦娥被杀之后，霎时天昏地暗，大雪纷飞，接下来，楚州地方大旱了三年。后来，窦娥的父亲窦天章在京城做官，窦娥的冤案得到平反昭雪，杀人凶手张驴儿被处死刑，贪官桃机也得到应有的惩罚。

这个戏剧所写的未必是真人真事，六月飞雪，更是一种神话式的想象。但是它反映了在封建统治下，无数含冤受苦的百姓伸冤报仇的强烈愿望。所以，千百年来，这出戏一直受到人们的喜爱赞赏，关汉卿也成为人民称颂的戏剧家。

He had Auntie Cai beaten in front of Dou E, who then felt compelled to confess to a murder she did not commit, because she could not stand the sight of her elderly mother-in-law being tortured.

The corrupt Tao Wu sentenced Dou E to death, after torturing a confession out of her. As she was led to the execution ground, Dou E, despairing of having her false conviction overturned, railed at Heaven and Earth. "Earth! Shame on you because you can't tell good and evil! Heaven! Shame on you because you can't tell right from wrong!"

Moments before her execution, she made three wishes: first, that her head would be cleanly chopped off with one strike of the sword, and all her blood would spill on the white flag for the dead; second, that a heavy snow would cover up her body; third, that Chuzhou would suffer drought three years in a row. Her wishes moved Heaven and Earth and the moment after her execution a heavy snow started falling from a darkened sky, even though it was the hot month of June. Three years of drought then inflicted Chuzhou. Dou E's father, Dou Tianzhou, became a high official in the capital and Dou E's wrongful conviction was overturned. The real killer Donkey Zhang was sentenced to death, and the corrupt governor Tao Wu got his just deserts.

The play was fiction, and snow in June is a product of the playwright's imagination. However, the play gave expression to the strong desire of the people under feudal rule for justice and retribution. That is the explanation for the enduring popularity of this play, and Guan Hanqin's well-deserved reputation as one of the most acclaimed playwrights in Chinese history.

29、一只眼的石人

元朝从成宗以后，又传了九个皇帝，皇室内部斗争十分激烈，政治也越来越腐败，人民灾难深重。最后一个皇帝元顺帝（又叫元惠宗）妥懽帖睦尔即位后，荒淫残暴，闹得国库空虚，物价飞涨，百姓忍受不下去，很多地方爆发了农民起义。

河北有个农民叫韩山童，他祖父是个教书先生，曾经利用传教的形式，暗地组织农民反抗元朝，被官府发现，充军到永年（今河北邯郸东北）。韩山童长大以后，继续组织白莲会（一种秘密宗教组织），聚集了不少受苦受难的农民，烧香拜佛。韩山童对他们说：现在天下大乱，佛祖将要派弥勒佛下凡，拯救百姓。这个传说很快传到河南和江淮一带，百姓们都盼望着有那么一天，弥勒佛真会下凡来。

正巧在这个时候，黄河在白茅堤决口，又碰上接连下了二十多天大雨，洪水泛滥，两岸百姓遭受严重水灾。有人向朝廷

29. A One-eyed Stone Figurine

After the reign of Emperor Chengzong, nine more emperors passed through the Yuan throne. Infighting and internal strife intensified in the court, and political corruption deepened, bringing unbearable hardship to the population. Toghan-Temür, the last Yuan Emperor, with the title of Emperor Shundi of Yuan, was a dissolute, ruthless ruler, under whose reign the state coffers were depleted and prices soared. Many peasants, unable to eke out a living and driven to despair, rose up in revolt.

A teacher in Hebei was secretly using a cult called the White Lotus Society to organize an anti-Yuan peasant movement. The government discovered his activities, and sent him away to Yongnian (northeast of modern-day Handan, Hebei Province) to do forced labor for the military. His grandson, Han Shantong, then took up leadership of the cult, and began recruiting impoverished peasants and holding meetings in worship of Buddha. Han Shantong said to the peasants, "Buddha is going to send Maitreya Bodhisattva down to this anarchic world to rescue the masses." This prediction soon spread to the Henan and Jianghuai areas, where the people began waiting expectantly for the advent of Maitreya Bodhisattva.

At this time, the Yellow River breached the dike at Baimao. Heavy rains lasting for more than twenty days triggered devastating floods, causing widespread destruction to people on both sides of the river. A proposal was made to the central government to repair the breach while at the same time digging another channel in

建议，把决口的地方堵住，另外在黄陵冈（今山东曹县西南）开挖河道，疏通河水。公元1351年，元王朝征发了汴梁（今河南开封）、大名等十三路民工十五万和兵士两万人，到黄陵冈开河。

修河工程开始了。民工们在烈日暴雨下，被迫日日夜夜拼命地干活，可是朝廷拨下来的开河经费，却让治河的官吏克扣了去。修河的民工连饭也吃不饱，怨声载道。

韩山童决定抓住这个机会，发动群众。他先派几百个会徒去做挑河民工，在工地上传播一支民谣：

“石人一只眼，挑动黄河天下反。”

民工们不懂这歌谣是什么意思，但是听到里面有“天下反”三个字，就觉得好日子快要到来了。开河开到了黄陵冈，有几个民工挖呀挖呀，忽然挖出一个石人来。大家好奇地聚拢来一瞧，只见石人脸上正是一只眼，不禁呆住了。这件新鲜事又很快地在十几万民工中传开来，大家心里都想，民谣说的真的应验了，既然石人出来，天下造反的日子自然来到了。

不用说，这个石人是韩山童事先偷偷地埋在那里的。

百姓被鼓动起来了。韩山童有个伙伴刘福通，对韩山童说，现在元朝压迫百姓那么厉害，百姓还想念着宋朝。如果打起恢

Huanglinggang (southwest of modern-day Can County, Shandong Province) to divert the river water. In 1351 AD, the Yuan government conscripted 150,000 civilians in Bianliang (modern-day Kaifeng, Henan Province) and Daming. They organized them into thirteen forced-labor detachments, and sent them with 20,000 soldiers to Huanglinggang to dig a new river channel.

As the digging project got underway, the civilian laborers were forced to toil day and night in the heavy rain, while the officials overseeing the project liberally helped themselves with the government funds earmarked for the work. As a result, not enough was spent on feeding the laborers, who often went hungry. Discontent swelled.

Han Shantong saw an opportunity to mobilize the masses. He sent a few hundred sect followers to join the forced-labor detachments. Upon arrival, they started spreading a ditty: "A one-eyed stone figurine heralds a revolt on the Yellow River."

The channel diggers did not really understand the ditty, but the mention of a "revolt" gave them a sense of imminent liberation and a vision of better days to come. When the digging progressed to Huanglinggang, a few laborers suddenly hit a stone figurine. Others flocked to look, and were flabbergasted at the sight of a stone man with only one eye. This curious fact immediately spread among the hundreds of thousands of laborers, who thought the ditty's prophecy had now been fulfilled. It naturally meant the day of revolt had come. Of course, the stone figurine had been secretly placed there by Han Shantong.

The masses were now stirred up. Liu Futong, a friend of Han Shantong's, said to him, "The people are nostalgic for the Song Dynasty because they are fed up with the iron-handed rule of

复宋朝的旗帜，拥护的人就会更多。韩山童很赞成这个主张，就跟大家宣布，说韩山童本来不姓韩，而是姓赵，按辈分排起来，还是宋徽宗的第八代孙子，刘福通也是南宋大将刘光世的后代。他们说得那么有鼻子有眼睛，百姓们听了，也不由不信。

韩山童、刘福通挑选个日子，聚集了一批人，杀了一匹白马，一头黑牛，祭告天地。大家推韩山童做领袖，号称“明王”，并约定日子，在颍州颍上（今安徽阜阳、颍上）起义，用红巾裹头作为起义军的标记。正在鼓血立誓的时候，有人走漏了消息，官府派兵士把韩山童抓去，押到县衙门杀了。韩山童的妻子带着他儿子韩林儿，逃脱了官府追捕，到武安（今河北武安）躲了起来。

刘福通逃出包围，把约定起义的农民召集起来，攻占了颍州等一些据点。原来在黄陂冈开河的民工得到消息，也杀了河官，纷纷投奔刘福通的队伍。因为起义兵士头上裹着红巾，当时的百姓把他们称做红军。历史上把它称做红巾军。不到十天，红巾军已经发展到十多万人。

the Yuan Dynasty. If we use the battle cry of restoring the Song Dynasty, we will get a larger following.”

Han Shantong liked this idea and announced publicly, “Han Shantong’s original surname is not Han but Zhao. He is actually an eighth generation descendant of Emperor Huizong of Song. Liu Futong is a descendant of the Southern Song general Liu Guangshi.” These invented details convinced the credulous laborers.

On an auspicious day selected by Han Shantong and Liu Futong, a public gathering was organized to witness the killing of a white horse and a black ox, which were offered to the gods above and below. The crowd acclaimed Han Shantong as their leader, with the title of King Ming. A date was set for launching a revolt in Yingshang, Yingzhou (modern-day Fuyang and Yingshang, Anhui Province), with red turbans as the insurgents’ identifying mark. As the gathering proceeded to swear a blood oath of allegiance, government troops arrived and arrested Han Shantong, who was taken to the county government building and executed. His wife succeeded in evading the government troops, and went into hiding in Wu’an (in Hebei Province) with their son Han Lin’er.

After breaking through the encircling government troops, Liu Futong mustered the peasants who had agreed to participate in the revolt and took control of some positions around Yingzhou. When news of their action reached the laborers on the Huanglinggang project, these workers killed their supervisors and joined up with Liu Futong. Because of the red turbans of the insurgents, they were dubbed the “Red Army” by the people, and are known to Chinese history as the Red Turban Army. Within ten days, the Red Turban Army had grown to more than 100,000 men.

元王朝听到刘福通声势浩大，吓慌了神，赶忙调动了六千各色目人组成的阿速军和几支汉军，镇压红巾军。阿速军本来是元王朝的一支精锐的队伍，但是那时候，已经十分腐败，将领们只知道喝酒享乐，兵士们到处抢劫，一碰上红巾军，还没交锋，主将带头挥着鞭子，骑马向后逃奔，嘴里还不停地叫喊着：“阿卜，阿卜！”（阿卜是走的意思。）下面的兵士一看主将临阵脱逃，也都四散逃窜。

过了一个月，刘福通的红巾军又连续攻下了一批城池，江淮一带的农民早就受到白莲会的影响，听到刘福通起义，纷纷响应，像衡水（今湖北衡水，蒙古叫）的徐寿辉，漳州（今安徽凤阳）的郭子兴，都打起红巾军的旗号起义，也有不打红巾军旗号的，像江苏北部的张士诚。

公元1354年，元顺帝派丞相脱脱集中了诸王和各省人马，动用了四城、四省的兵力，号称百万，围攻占领高邮的张士诚起义军，高邮城被围得水泄不通。起义军正在危急的时候，元王朝突然发生内乱，元顺帝下令撤掉脱脱的官爵，百万元军失去了统帅，不战自乱，全军崩溃。

The Yuan government was alarmed at the rapid growth of Liu Futong's force, and immediately deployed the A-Su Army, comprised of 6,000 Semuren and a number of Han units, to quash the Red Turban rebellion. In the past, the A-Su Army was an elite force, but it was now a pale shadow of its former self, with its commanders wallowing in drink and revelry and the soldiers indulging in rampant looting. When the A-Su Army met the Red Turbans, its supreme commander turned his horse around and fled before fighting even started, shouting, "A bu! A hu!" ("Run, run!"). His soldiers followed his example and scattered in all directions.

A month later, Liu Futong's Red Turbans succeeded in capturing several towns in a row. The peasants in the Jianghuai area, long under the influence of the White Lotus Society, joined Liu Futong's rebellion. Xu Shouhui of Qishui (modern-day Xishui, Hubei Province) and Guo Zixing of Haozhou (modern-day Fengyang, Anhui Province), for example, rebelled under the Red Turban flag. At the same time, there were other rebels who did not use the Red Turban flag, such as Zhang Shicheng in north Jiangsu.

In 1354 AD, Emperor Shundi of Yuan ordered Chief Minister Tuotuo to muster a 1,000,000-strong army comprised of forces under the command of princes, troops from the provinces and from the Western Regions. They were to attack the insurgents led by Zhang Shicheng, who had taken control of Gaoyou. The Yuan army imposed a watertight siege around Gaoyou. At this critical juncture, an internal conflict broke out in the Yuan central government, with Emperor Shundi stripping Tuotuo of his position. The Yuan army, without its Commander-in-Chief, soon went into disarray and collapsed.

元军溃散以后，刘福通的北方起义军趁机出击，大破元军。第二年二月，刘福通把韩山童的儿子韩林儿接到亳州（今安徽亳县）正式称帝，国号叫宋。韩林儿被称为小明王。

韩林儿、刘福通在亳州建立政权以后，分兵三路，出师北伐。西路军由李武、崔德率领，进攻陕西、甘肃、宁夏、四川；东路军由毛贵率领，从山东、河北，直逼元朝京城大都；中路军由关先生、破头潘等率领，从山西打到辽东，配合东路军攻打大都。

三路北伐军都取得很大的进展，毛贵的东路军一直打到元大都城下。刘福通亲自率领大军攻占了汴梁，把小明王韩林儿接到汴梁，定为都城。红巾军声势浩大，元王朝大起恐慌，纠集地主武装加紧镇压，三路北伐军先后失利，汴梁又落在元军手里。元王朝又用高官厚禄招降了张士诚，刘福通保护小明王逃到安丰（今安徽寿县）后，受到张士诚的袭击，公元1363年，刘福通在战斗中牺牲。北方起义军经过十二年的战斗，终于失败。

After the Yuan army disintegrated, insurgents led by Liu Futong in the north pressed on and routed the Yuan troops. In February of the next year, Liu Futong brought Han Shantong's son, Han Lin'er, to Bozhou (modern-day Bo County, Anhui Province) and proclaimed him Emperor of the Song Dynasty. Han Lin'er was given the title King Ming, Junior.

After founding the new regime, Han Lin'er and Liu Futong embarked on a northern expedition. A western army led by Li Wu and Cui De was to campaign in Shaanxi, Gansu, Ningxia and Sichuan. An eastern army led by Mao Gui was to advance toward the Yuan capital of Dadu through Shandong and Hebei. While a central army led by Guan Xiansheng and Potou Pan would campaign from Shanxi to Liaodong, and support the eastern army in its attack against Dadu.

The three armies of the northern expedition made good headway, with Mao Gui's eastern army approaching Dadu. After taking control of Bianliang, Liu Futong brought Han Lin'er, King Ming, Jr., to Bianliang, which was now designated as the capital of their regime. The growing strength of the Red Turban Army alarmed the Yuan government, and they mustered armed bands of landowners to suppress the rebellion. The three armies of the northern expedition suffered battle losses, and Bianliang was retaken by the Yuan troops. By offering a high position in the Yuan government and generous material incentives, the Yuan court was able to buy off Zhang Shicheng. After escorting King Ming, Jr. to the safety of Anfeng (modern-day Shou County, Anhui Province), Liu Futong's force came under attack by Zhang Shicheng. In 1363 AD, Liu Futong died in battle and the insurgency of the north faltered after twelve years of fighting.

30、和尚当元帅

在刘福通红巾军转战北方的时候，濠州郭子兴红巾军正在壮大起来。

郭子兴本来是定远（今安徽定远）地方一个财主，因为出身低微，经常受地方官吏的敲诈勒索，心里气忿不过，加入了白莲会。他拿出家里的钱财，摆酒杀牛，结交江湖好汉，只等一有机会，就杀死那批贪官污吏，出口恶气。

公元1352年，也就是刘福通起义的第二年，郭子兴看见时机成熟，就和四个朋友一起，带着几千个年轻人，趁着黑夜，打进濠州城，杀了州官，把濠州城占领了，宣布起义。郭子兴和他的四个好友都自称元帅。

元王朝派大将彻里不花带兵围攻濠州。彻里不花害怕红巾军，不敢攻城，在老远的地方扎下营垒，却派兵士在城外捉了一些百姓，当作俘虏向上级冒功请赏。城外的老百姓遭到迫害，过不了日子，纷纷逃到城里投奔郭子兴。郭子兴的队伍越来越壮大。

30. A Monk Turned Grand Marshal

As the Red Turbans of Liu Futong were fighting in the north, Red Turbans led by Guo Zixing grew in strength in Haozhou. Guo Zixing was a wealthy man in Dingyuan (in Anhui Province) who was a frequent target of extortion by local officials because of his humble origin. He joined the White Lotus Society out of indignation. He befriended Robin Hood types, winning and dining them at great expense and biding his time for a chance to avenge all the wrongs he had suffered by killing the corrupt officials.

In 1352 AD, the year after Liu Futong started the rebellion, Guo Zixing saw his chance and, under cover of night, he and four friends led a few thousand young men on a raid into the city of Haozhou, killing the governor and taking control of the local government. They announced the beginning of their rebellion, with Guo Zixing and his four friends as grand marshals.

The Yuan government sent General Cherig Bukha to lay siege to Haozhou. Cherig Bukha was afraid of the Red Turbans, so instead of launching an offensive he camped at a safe distance from the city. He had his soldiers capture some civilians outside the city, and reported these civilians as prisoners of war in order to receive credit and rewards from the government. The inhabitants outside city limits could not bear the exactions of the Yuan troops, and fled into the city to seek the protection of Guo Zixing. This influx of refugees swelled Guo's ranks.

有一天晚上，濠州的红巾军正在城门边巡逻。忽然域外来了一个青年和尚，说要投奔红巾军。守门的红巾军兵士怀疑他是元军派来刺探军情的奸细，一面把他捆绑起来，一面派人报告郭子兴。

郭子兴一听，心想也许来的真是投奔他的好汉，亲自骑马到城门口去察看。只见那个被捆绑起来的和尚，虽然衣服穿得破破烂烂，却长得身材魁梧，浓眉大眼。郭子兴一看，心里十分喜欢，马上命令兵士松了绑，把和尚带回元帅府。

那个投奔郭子兴的青年和尚，名叫朱元璋。他父亲是濠州钟离（今安徽凤阳东）一个贫苦农民。朱元璋十七岁那年，淮北地方闹了一场严重的旱灾和蝗灾，接着又蔓延了瘟疫。朱元璋的父亲、母亲和大哥接连传染上了疫病，咽了气。剩下朱元璋和他的二哥，连买口棺材的钱也没有，亏得邻居同情他们，帮助他们把父母埋葬了。

朱元璋失去了父母亲，生活没有着落。邻居给他出了个主意，要他到附近的皇觉寺当小和尚，混口饭吃。这样，朱元璋就出了家。那种寺院里的小和尚，其实是给人使唤的佣人。朱元璋每天伺候师父、师兄，起早摸黑，扫地，上香，敲钟，做饭，日子过得挺苦。

One evening as the Red Turbans of Haozhou were on a patrol near the city gate, a young monk came toward them and expressed the wish to join the Red Turban Army. Suspecting that he was Yuan spy on a reconnaissance mission, the soldiers guarding the gate bound him up and reported the incident.

After hearing the report, Guo Zixing decided to give the monk the benefit of the doubt and rode to the gate to take a personal look. He found the monk tied up and in rags, but nevertheless possessing a strong build, thick eyebrows and big eyes. Guo Zixing liked what he saw, and immediately ordered his soldiers to untie the monk and bring him to the office of the Grand Marshal.

The young monk who wanted to offer his service to Guo Zixing was Zhu Yuanzhang. His father was a struggling peasant in Zhongli, Haozhou (east of modern-day Fengyang, Anhui Province). When Zhu Yuanzhang was 17, a serious drought and a plague of locusts struck the Huabei area. This was followed by an epidemic, which killed his father, his mother and his eldest brother. Zhu Yuanzhang and his second elder brother survived, but did not have money to buy the coffins. Only with the help of some sympathetic neighbors were they able to bury their parents.

Now orphaned, Zhu Yuanzhang had a hard time feeding himself. At neighbors' suggestion he became a junior monk at the nearby Huangjue Temple so that he could at least have something to eat. This is how Zhu Yuanzhang became a monk. The junior monks in the temple were actually menial servants. Zhu Yuanzhang waited on his master and on the other students who were his seniors, rising early and going to bed late, performing chores such as sweeping the temple grounds, putting up incense sticks, ringing the bell and cooking meals.

但是，那个日子里要在皇觉寺混口饭吃也不容易。原来，皇觉寺是靠收租米过日子的，这年灾情严重，皇觉寺收不到租米。朱元璋在寺里呆了才五十天，眼看要断粮了。师父、师兄们一个个离开寺院到外面化缘去，朱元璋也被打发出门，带着小木鱼和钵头到淮西一带流浪讨饭。过了三年，濠州的灾情稍微缓和了一点，他才又回到皇觉寺。

又过了一年，红巾军起义爆发了，朱元璋在寺里不断听到外面传来的消息，一会儿是刘福通占领了颍州，一会儿是芝麻李占领了徐州。到了年底，又听到濠州也被红巾军占领了。朱元璋早就听到弥勒佛要下凡救世的传说，现在又听到红巾军到处起兵，元兵节节败退，心里想，穷人出头的日子到了，就离开皇觉寺，到濠州来投奔郭子兴。

郭子兴跟朱元璋一谈话，发觉他口齿伶俐，十分赏识，马上叫他脱下和尚的袈裟，换上兵士服装，把他留在身边当个亲兵长。

朱元璋参加起义军以后，马上表现出他的才能。他打仗勇敢，又有计谋。郭子兴把他当作心腹看待，出去打仗，总要先跟他商量。在起义兵士中，朱元璋的声望渐渐提高了。

However, getting fed at the temple was not easy, because the temple depended on rent paid to it in the form of rice. During this time of natural disasters, the temple was not receiving its rent. After only fifty days at the temple, Zhu Yuanzhang realized that they were running out of food. His master and fellow students had all gone out to beg for alms. Zhu Yuanzhang himself was sent out of the temple with an alms bowl and a small wooden fish drum to beg alms in the Huaixi area. Three years later, with the effects of the natural disasters easing a bit, he returned to the Huangjue Temple.

A year later, the Red Turban Army started its rebellion. News of Liu Futong's capture of Yingzhou, Sesame Li taking Xuzhou, and so forth, filtered into the temple and reached Zhu Yuanzhang's ears. At year's end, he heard that the Red Turbans had taken Haozhou. Zhu Yuanzhang had also heard some time ago about the coming of Maitreya Bodhisattva to bring salvation to the masses. The news about the spreading rebellion of the Red Turbans and the defeat of Yuan troops in battle after battle reinforced his sense that the salvation of the poor and the downtrodden was near. He decided to leave the Huangjue Temple to offer his service to Guo Zixing in Haozhou.

In his conversation with Zhu Yuanzhang, Guo Zixing was impressed by his articulateness. Immediately, he had him take off his cassock and change into a military uniform. Guo Zixing made him a close bodyguard.

Zhu Yuanzhang had an opportunity to show his talents in the Red Turban Army. He was courageous and astute in battle, and Guo Zixing placed great trust in him, always consulting him before a battle. Zhu Yuanzhang's stature grew among the Red Turbans.

郭子兴有个好朋友姓马，在郭子兴起兵那年病死。马公临死的时候，把他的孤女托给郭子兴照顾。郭子兴把女孩带回家里，交给妻子张夫人抚养，把她当作自己的亲生女儿一样。郭子兴一直想给她选个好女婿。这一回，见朱元璋是个人才，就跟张夫人商量，要把马公的女儿嫁给朱元璋，张夫人一听也十分赞成。这样，皇觉寺的小和尚就做了郭元帅的女婿，地位也不同了。在起义军中，大家都称他“朱公子”。

濠州的红巾军里，连郭子兴在内，共有五个元帅。五个人平起平坐，不分高低，谁也管不了谁。除郭子兴外，另外四个元帅都有点江湖气，不讲纪律。郭子兴渐渐看不惯他们，他们也嫌着郭子兴。日子久了，矛盾越来越深，四个人就合在一起，排挤郭子兴。有一次郭子兴差点被他们害死，亏得朱元璋得到消息，把郭子兴救了出来。

朱元璋发现起义军的几个将帅胸襟狭窄，在他们手下干事，成不了什么气候，就回到老家，招兵买马。他少年时候的伙伴徐达、汤和，听说朱元璋做了红巾军的将领，都来投奔。不到十天，就招募了七百人。后来，又袭击元军，招降了一批元军。

A friend of Guo Zixing's, by the name of Ma, died of illness the year Guo started the rebellion. Ma had entrusted his only daughter to the care of Guo Zixing on his deathbed. The girl was brought home by Guo and given to his wife to take care of as if she were their biological daughter. Guo Zixing had been looking for a suitable husband for her. Recognizing Zhu Yuanzhang's abilities, he discussed with his wife the idea of marrying Ma's daughter to Zhu Yuanzhang. His wife approved of the idea, too. When the junior monk of the Huangjue Temple became the son-in-law of Grand Marshal Guo, he acquired a special status. The Red Turbans took to calling him "Master Zhu".

There were five Grand Marshals, including Guo Zixing, in the Red Turban Army in Huozhou. The five marshals were equal in rank, and therefore no one had authority over any of the other marshals. Unlike Guo Zixing, the other four marshals had carried over habits and styles acquired in their swashbuckling days, and had no respect for discipline. Guo Zixing was increasingly annoyed by them, and they by him. Tensions between them grew with the passage of time, and the other four ganged up to sideline Guo Zixing. Once they nearly killed Guo, but he was saved when Zhu Yuanzhang came to his rescue after learning of the plot.

Finding some commanders in the rebel army narrow-minded and petty, Zhu Yuanzhang felt he would not accomplish anything under them. He returned to his hometown to recruit for his own army. Xu Da and Tang He, friends from his youth, came to offer their service after hearing that Zhu Yuanzhang had become a commander in the Red Turban Army. In less than ten days, he was able to assemble a force of 700. In subsequent attacks against Yuan troops, he was able to pick up many defectors.

朱元璋得了大批生力军，整顿纪律，加紧训练，把手下的军队训练成一支战斗力很强的队伍，声势大振。

定远有个文人李善长，是个很有计谋的人，也来找朱元璋。朱元璋知道他很有学问，就留他在起义军里当谋士。有一次，朱元璋问李善长说：“现在全国到处都在打仗，什么时候才能太平呢？”

李善长说：“秦朝末年，也这样大乱过。汉高祖是平民出身，因为他气量大，能够用人才，又不乱杀人，只花了五年时间，就统一天下。现在元朝政治这样混乱，天下土崩瓦解，您何不向汉高祖学习呢？”

打那时候起，朱元璋就一心一意想学汉高祖刘邦。

朱元璋带着自己训练出来的队伍，连续打下滁州、和州。小明王韩林儿在亳州称帝那年，郭子兴得病死了。小明王就封郭子兴的儿子郭天叙为都元帅，朱元璋做了副元帅。

Having gathered a fighting force, Zhu Yuanzhang put it through intensive training and instilled rigorous discipline in the soldiers and officers, creating an army to be reckoned with.

An intellectual in Dingyuan called Li Shanchang, who was an expert in tactics and strategy, also came to Zhu Yuanzhang. Well aware of his knowledge, Zhu Yuanzhang kept him on as an adviser. Once, Zhu Yuanzhang asked Li Shanchang, "War is raging across the country. When will we have peace?"

Li Shanchang replied, "The same chaos plagued the waning years of the Qin Dynasty. Emperor Gaozu of Han, a civilian, was able to unify the country in only five years because of his physical strength, his ability to tap talent, and his wisdom in avoiding needless killing. Now that the Yuan Dynasty is in such political chaos and anarchy reigns, why don't you emulate Emperor Gaozu of Han?"

From that moment on, Zhu Yuanzhang set out to be another Emperor Gaozu of Han.

At the head of the army trained by him, Zhu Yuanzhang captured Chuzhou and Hezhou in quick succession. In the year Han Lin'er, King Ming, Jr., became Emperor in Bozhou, Guo Zixing died of illness. King Ming, Jr. made Guo Tianxu, Guo Zixing's son, Grand Marshal and Zhu Yuanzhang Deputy Grand Marshal.

郭天叙没有什么指挥的经验，加上红巾军中大多将士都是朱元璋的亲信，朱元璋名义上是副帅，实权全掌握在他手里。没多久，郭天叙在攻打集庆（今江苏南京）的时候，被叛徒杀死，朱元璋就当了名副其实的元帅。

朱元璋独掌兵权以后，率领大军大破元朝水军，渡江攻打集庆，集庆五十多万军民投降。朱元璋进了集庆，出榜安民，把集庆改名应天府。打那时候起，朱元璋就以应天府作为根据地，向江南一带发展。

With Guo Tianxu lacking experience in commanding an army, and with Zhu Yuanzhang commanding the loyalty of most officers and men of the Red Turban Army, with Zhu Yuanzhang, the nominal Deputy Marshal, wielded real authority. Shortly afterwards, Guo Tianxu was killed by traitors in an attack against Jiqing (modern-day Nanjing, Jiangsu Province), and Zhu Yuanzhang became Grand Marshal.

With the military under his control, Zhu Yuanzhang routed the naval force of the Yuan Dynasty and led his massive army across the river to attack Jiqing, where its half a million inhabitants and defenders surrendered. After entering the city, Zhu Yuanzhang issued an order to reassure the inhabitants, and changed the name of the city to Yingtian. From then on Zhu Yuanzhang would expand his influence to Jiangnan with Yingtian as his base.

15500 cya

Copyright © 2009 Shanghai Press and Publishing Development Company

All rights reserved. Unauthorized reproduction, in any manner, is prohibited.

This book is edited and designed by the Editorial Committee of *Cultural China* series

Managing Directors: Wang Youbu, Xu Naiqing

Editorial Director: Wu Ying

Editor (Chinese): Zhou Kexi

Editor (English): Patrick Wallace

Chinese Text by Lin Handa and Cao Yuzhang

Translation by Yawtsong Lee

Interior and Cover Design: Yuan Yinchang, Xia Wei

ISBN 978-1-60220-919-0

Address any comments about *Tales from Five Thousand Years of Chinese History (V)* to:

Better Link Press

99 Park Ave

New York, NY 10016

USA

or

Shanghai Press and Publishing Development Company

F 7 Donghu Road, Shanghai, China (200031)

Email: comments_betterlinkpress@hotmail.com

Computer typeset by Yuan Yinchang Design Studio, Shanghai

Printed in China by Shanghai Donnelley Printing Co. Ltd.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10